

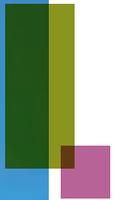
Process Manual

Technical guidelines for the insulation
of industrial installations



ProRox

Industrial
insulation



Go and register online for free calculation

Discover ROCKASSIST, the thermal calculation tool at rockwool-rti.com

Simply sign up at www.rockwool.com and start using our free expert tool ROCKASSIST right away. It runs on all of the standard operating systems and internet browsers – no installations necessary!



EXPERT TOOL



ROCKASSIST is available on smartphone and tablet

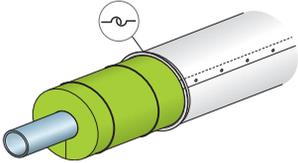
Overview: ROCKWOOL™ Industrial Insulation Solutions

1.2 Insulation of piping

23

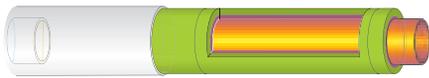
1.2.1 Insulation with pipe sections

29



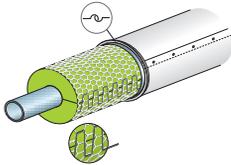
1.2.2 Insulation with pipe wraps (mats)

31



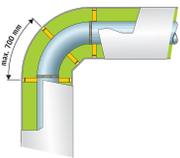
1.2.3 Insulation with wired mats

33



1.2.4 Insulation support

34



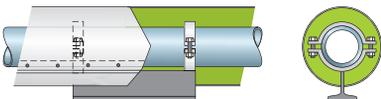
1.2.5 Cladding

36



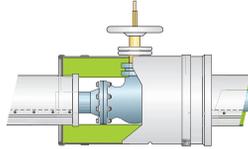
1.2.6 Pipe hangers and pipe support

39



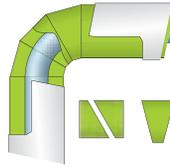
1.2.7 Insulation of valves and flanges

40



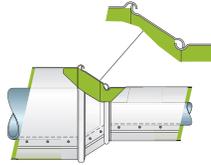
1.2.8 Insulation of pipe elbows and T pieces

42



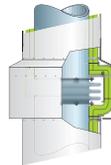
1.2.9 Reducers

43



1.2.10 Expansion joints

44



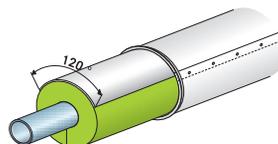
1.2.11 Tracing

45

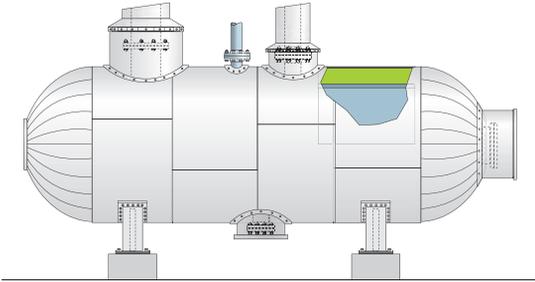


1.2.12 Foot traffic

46

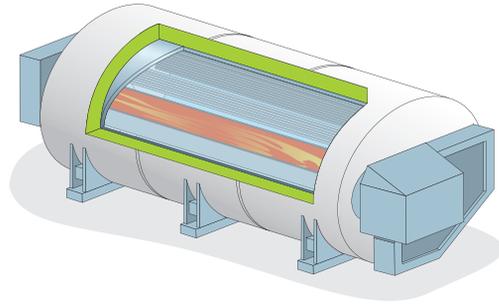


1.3 Insulation of vessels 47

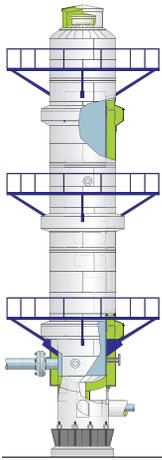


1.6 Insulation of boilers 67

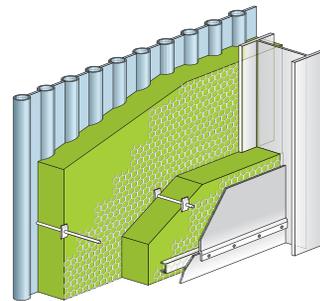
1.6.1 Insulation of fire tube boilers 67



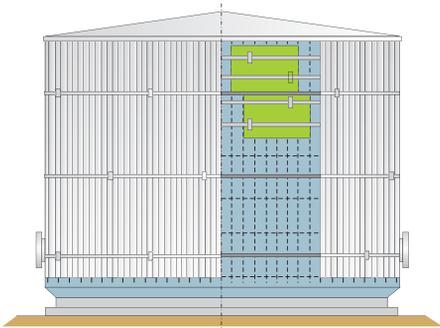
1.4 Insulation of columns 53



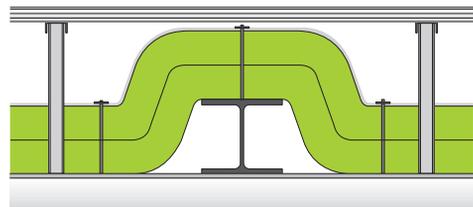
1.6.2 Supercritical steam generators 69



1.5 Insulation of storage tanks 59



1.7 Insulation of flue gas ducts 75



1.8 Cold boxes 82

Contents

7

1. System solutions

| | |
|----------------------------------|----|
| 1.1 Planning and preparation | 11 |
| 1.2 Insulation of piping | 23 |
| 1.3 Insulation of vessels | 47 |
| 1.4 Insulation of columns | 53 |
| 1.5 Insulation of storage tanks | 59 |
| 1.6 Insulation of boilers | 67 |
| 1.7 Insulation of flue gas ducts | 75 |
| 1.8 Cold boxes | 82 |

85

2. Theory

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| 2.1 Norms & Standards | 88 |
| 2.2 Product properties & test methods | 107 |
| 2.3 Bases for thermal calculations | 120 |

127

3. Tables

| | |
|--|-----|
| 3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables | 130 |
| 3.2 Product properties insulation and cladding materials | 146 |
| 3.3 Usage tables | 149 |

169

4. Products

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| ProRox® PS 960 ^{NA} | 173 |
| ProRox® PS 980 ^{NA} | 173 |
| ENERWRAP® MA 960 ^{NA} | 174 |
| ProRox® SL 920 ^{NA} | 175 |
| ProRox® SL 930 ^{NA} | 175 |
| ProRox® SL 940 ^{NA} | 176 |
| ProRox® SL 960 ^{NA} | 176 |
| ProRox® SL 540 ^{NA} | 177 |
| ProRox® SL 560 ^{NA} | 177 |
| ProRox® SL 590 ^{NA} | 178 |
| ProRox® SL 430 ^{NA} | 179 |
| ProRox® SL 450 ^{NA} | 179 |
| ProRox® SL 460 ^{NA} | 180 |
| ProRox® SL 760 ^{NA} | 180 |
| ProRox® FSL 920 ^{NA} | 181 |
| ProRox® FSL 930 ^{NA} | 181 |
| ProRox® FSL 940 ^{NA} | 182 |
| ProRox® FSL 960 ^{NA} | 182 |
| ProRox® MA 930 ^{NA} | 183 |
| ProRox® MA 940 ^{NA} | 183 |
| ProRox® GR 903 | 184 |
| ProRox® LF 970 | 184 |
| ProRox® GRP 1000 | 185 |



ROCKWOOL™ insulation provide superior thermal and acoustical performance and are fire resistant, water repellent, non-corrosive and resistant to mold. Specialists often willingly turn to our products and expertise in industrial and marine & offshore insulation. We have now packaged that expertise into a practical guide: the 'ProRox® insulation Process Manual'.

This manual offers a transparent overview of our ProRox® product range, including thermal, fire-resistant, compression, comfort/multi-purpose, fabrication and acoustic insulation solutions for technical installations in the process & power generation industries.

The Process Manual is a convenient resource tool with relevant information at your fingertips. Fold-out sections take you directly to the right page, whether you are looking for straight forward piping insulation or more complex applications for columns, tanks and boilers. In addition to pictures and photographs, a range of tables and diagrams are included.

The ROCKWOOL Process Manual is a helpful tool for the application of our ProRox® industrial insulation solutions in a process environment. Should you need any further information about a specific application, procedure or practical problem, please consult www.rockwool.com or contact your local ROCKWOOL representative at **1 800 265 6878**.



We share our knowledge to your advantage

ROCKWOOL™ Technical Insulation – a subsidiary of the ROCKWOOL Group – develops innovative industrial insulation solutions for the process industry and the shipbuilding & offshore market. Through our comprehensive product lines ProRox® and SeaRox® we offer a full spread of sustainable products and systems guaranteeing the highest possible protection of all technical installations against heat and energy loss, fire, noise and other unwanted influences.

Our +75 years of experience are reflected in a complete set of high-grade products and expert advice. Today, our dedicated and technically experienced people remain fully committed to providing the very best service and tools in the market and a total range of cutting-edge insulation solutions. Besides excellent insulation products,

they are the real key to our success. Thanks to their expertise and extensive experience, we can offer end users in the petrochemicals, power generation, shipbuilding, offshore and the process industries solid stone wool insulation solutions, expert tools and an impeccable service - all shaped to fit everyone's needs.

Industrial insulation

shaped by experts.



The ROCKWOOL™ Technical Insulation Process Manual

Know-how for designers, engineers, site supervisors and managers of industrial plants

Energy keeps the world in motion. Without it, everything would come to a standstill. The global economy is dependent upon a secure & efficient supply of energy. Over eighty percent of the energy currently being consumed is obtained from non-renewable resources. Those resources are becoming increasingly scarce, while at the same time the demand for energy is exploding. This means that owners, designers and operators of large, industrial plants are challenged with the task of reducing their energy consumption as much as possible in order to ensure the long term sustainability of their operations.

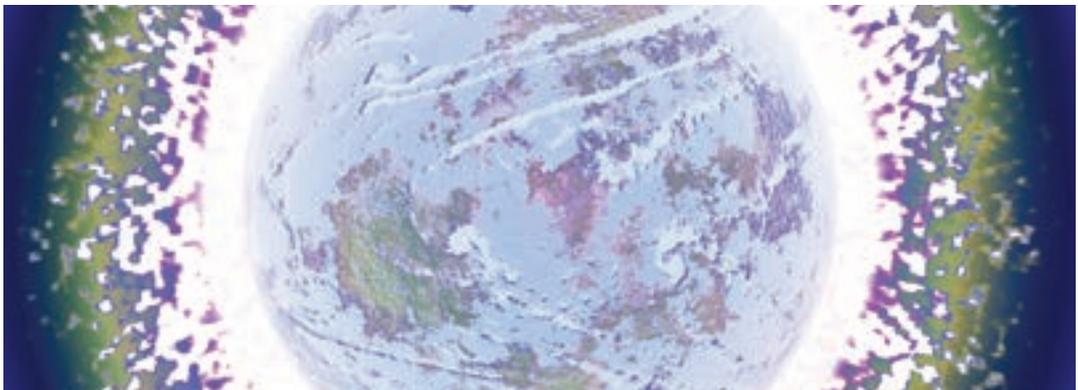
Solar energy is just one of the possible alternatives. Through, for example, solar power plants we already succeed in converting concentrated sunlight very efficiently into electricity. And this is just one of the solutions that can help us drive down fuel consumption and carbon emissions.

On top of that, insulation significantly reduces the energy needed to manufacture a product or provide a service. Also, new technologies for emission controls at existing fossil burning facilities is greatly enhanced by insulation. Nowadays there

are a variety of efficient insulation systems that enable scarce energy reserves to be put to the best possible use. The ROCKWOOL Industrial Insulation Process Manual illustrates these systems both theoretically and practically. This process manual targets designers, engineers, installers and managers of industrial plants and provides an overview of the modern insulation techniques for, by way of example, chemical or petrochemical installations and power generation facilities. Based on current standards and regulations the manual provides accessible, practical guidelines for the implementation of numerous insulation applications.

Restriction of thermal losses to an absolute minimum, including during transfer or storage, can considerably reduce the energy consumption of industrial plants. This also results in a reduction in carbon dioxide (CO₂) emissions, which are created each time fossil fuels such as coal or gas are burnt and which, as a greenhouse gas, is responsible for the global increase in temperature.

From an environmental perspective, adequate insulation of industrial plants is a significant means of reducing (CO₂) emissions.



In addition, the right insulation keeps temperatures, for example in pipes and storage tanks, within strict tolerances, thereby ensuring reliable process efficiency. At the same time, adequate insulation protects the plant itself. Modern insulating materials can thoroughly protect plant components from moisture and associated corrosion. Installation and process maintenance costs can be reduced considerably and the effective lifetime of industrial plants can be successfully maximized.

Furthermore, industrial insulation also provides a significant contribution to personnel protection. Optimum insulation reduces process temperatures and noise in the industrial environment to an acceptable level, to the limits generally regarded in the industry to be those required for a safe and comfortable working environment.

With a complete range of techniques and insulation systems, ROCKWOOL offers designers, engineers and construction supervisors optimum tailored solutions for the petrochemical, power generation, ship building, offshore and processing industries.



Process Manual

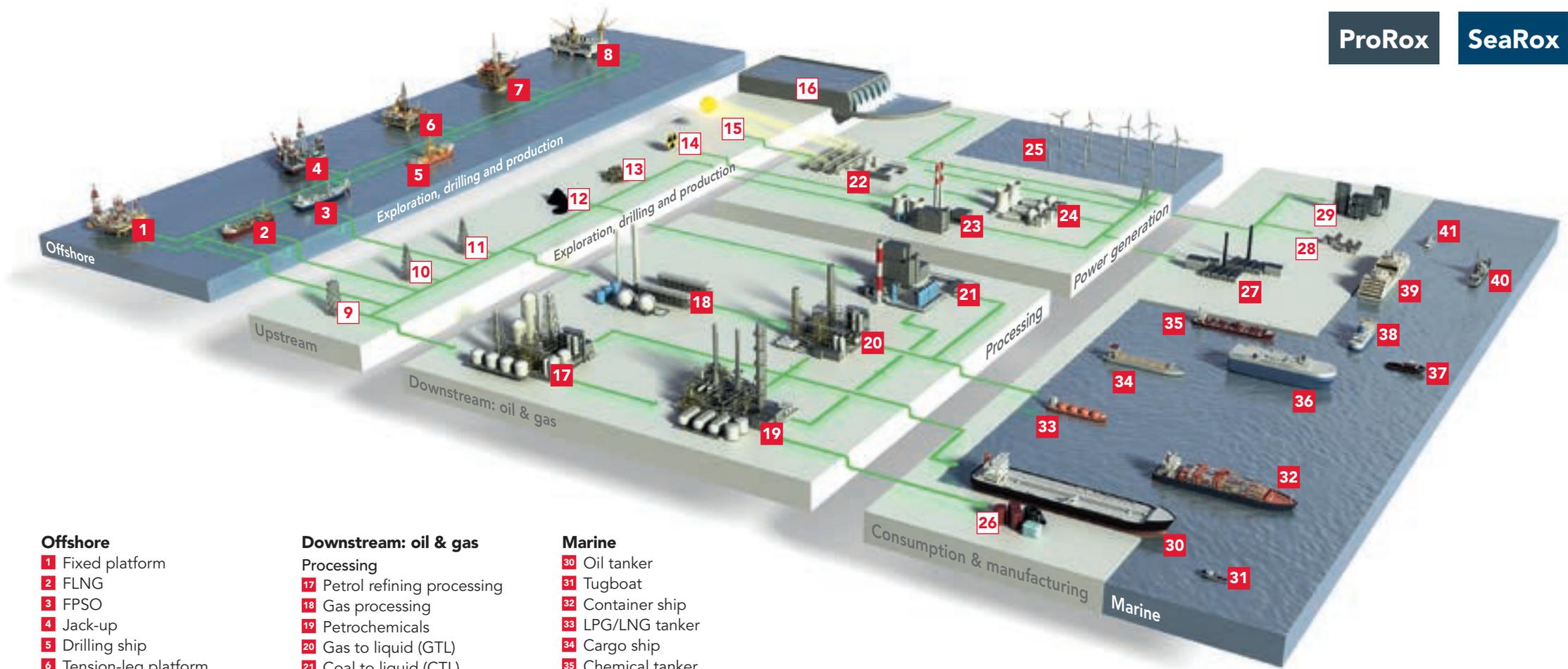
In the 'Flow of Energy' diagram on the following page, you will find an overview of all of the sectors in which ROCKWOOL is active. All of our ProRox® (and SeaRox®) products, such as pipe sections and boards (slabs) are designed to meet the highest quality and safety standards and comply with the strictest, and therefore safest, fire safety classes. Stone wool is non flammable, non combustible and can withstand temperatures up to 2150 °F (1177 °C) and therefore provides a crucial contribution towards passive fire protection.

As a supplement to this process manual, ROCKWOOL also regularly provides information about technical innovations, product solutions and recent and relevant documents available online at our website www.rockwool.com. NOTE: The process manual is a guideline and can only provide general advice for specific instances in the field of plant and processes. For these instances, the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team is available to provide advice during the design, engineering and implementation phases. Please find our contact details on the back cover of this manual.



Flow Of Energy >

ROCKWOOL™ Technical Insulation, flow of energy



- Offshore**
- 1 Fixed platform
 - 2 FLNG
 - 3 FPSO
 - 4 Jack-up
 - 5 Drilling ship
 - 6 Tension-leg platform
 - 7 Spar
 - 8 SSdT – (AU/DR/FPU)

- Upstream**
- 9 Oil
 - 10 Shale gas
 - 11 Natural gas
 - 12 Coal
 - 13 Waste
 - 14 Plutonium
 - 15 Sun
 - 16 Hydropower

- Downstream: oil & gas**
- 17 Petrol refining processing
 - 18 Gas processing
 - 19 Petrochemicals
 - 20 Gas to liquid (GTL)
 - 21 Coal to liquid (CTL)

- Power generation**
- 22 Solar power plant
 - 23 Conventional power generation
 - 24 Nuclear power generation
 - 25 Windfarm

- Consumption & manufacturing**
- 26 End products
 - 27 Manufacturing
 - 28 Residential
 - 29 Non-residential

- Marine**
- 30 Oil tanker
 - 31 Tugboat
 - 32 Container ship
 - 33 LPG/LNG tanker
 - 34 Cargo ship
 - 35 Chemical tanker
 - 36 Ro-Ro ship
 - 37 Fishing boat
 - 38 Ferry
 - 39 Cruiser/Passenger ship
 - 40 Military ship
 - 41 Yacht

BUSINESS AREAS

ProRox insulation:
Our ProRox product line covers all our thermal, fire-resistant and acoustic insulation solutions for technical installations in the process and in offshore industries.

SeaRox insulation:
SeaRox comprises the full marine and offshore product line. This sharp focus enables us to combine our expertise and extensive experience like never before to develop outstanding insulation solutions for our customers.



1

System solutions

ProRox

Industrial
Insulation

1. System solutions

Table of contents

| | |
|---|-----------|
| 1.1 Planning and preparation | 11 |
| 1.1.1 Decision criteria for the design of an insulation system | 11 |
| A. Functional requirements | 12 |
| B. Safety aspects | 16 |
| C. Economics | 17 |
| D. Environmental | 18 |
| E. Corrosion Prevention | 18 |
| 1.1.2 Design & planning of the insulation work | 19 |
| 1.1.3 Corrosion prevention | 19 |
| 1.1.4 Storage of insulation materials | 22 |
| 1.2 Insulation of piping | 23 |
| 1.2.1 Insulation with pipe sections | 29 |
| 1.2.2 Insulation with pipe wraps (mats) | 31 |
| 1.2.3 Insulation with wired mats | 33 |
| 1.2.4 Insulation support | 34 |
| 1.2.5 Cladding | 36 |
| 1.2.6 Pipe hangers and pipe supports | 39 |
| 1.2.7 Insulation of valves and flanges | 40 |
| 1.2.8 Insulation of pipe elbows and T pieces | 42 |
| 1.2.9 Reducers | 43 |
| 1.2.10 Expansion joints | 44 |
| 1.2.11 Tracing | 45 |
| 1.2.12 Foot traffic | 46 |
| 1.3 Insulation of vessels | 47 |
| 1.4 Insulation of columns | 53 |
| 1.5 Insulation of storage tanks | 59 |
| 1.6 Insulation of boilers | 67 |
| 1.6.1 Insulation of fire tube boilers | 67 |
| 1.6.2 Supercritical steam generators | 69 |
| 1.7 Insulation of flue gas ducts | 75 |
| 1.7.1 Installation of the insulation systems for flue gas ducts | 75 |
| 1.7.2 Cladding of flue gas ducts | 78 |
| 1.7.3 Acoustic insulation of flue gas ducts | 81 |
| 1.8 Cold boxes | 82 |

1. System solutions

1.1 Planning and preparation

The design of a suitable insulation system for industrial installations is a major factor for its economical operation, functionality, security, durability and environmental impact. Additionally, the installation-specific heat losses are specified for the entire life cycle of the plant. Corrections at a later stage, such as subsequently increasing the thickness of the insulation, for example, may no longer be possible due to lack of space. Corrections at a later stage may also entail a far greater investment compared to the original planning. Continually rising energy costs are also often overlooked factors when dimensioning the insulation. Insulation thicknesses that are designed to last take energy price increases into account. They form an important criterion for the economical operation of the installation after just a few years.

Properly dimensioned insulation systems constitute an important contribution to environmental protection, carbon dioxide (CO₂) reduction and to economic success. CO₂ reduction is also an economical operation, as it lowers the costs for CO₂ emission certificates. Nowadays, conservational and economical operations are no longer conflicting ideas, but are two inseparable parameters.

1.1.1. Decision criteria for the design of an insulation system

Selecting a suitable insulation system depends on the following five parameters:

- **A. Functional requirements**
 - a. Object dimensions
 - b. Operation of the installation
 - c. Operating temperatures
 - d. Permissible heat losses or temperature changes of the medium
 - e. Frost protection
 - f. Ambient conditions
 - g. Maintenance and inspection
- **B. Safety aspects**
 - a. Personal protection
 - b. Fire protection
 - c. Explosion prevention
 - d. Noise reduction within the plant
- **C. Economics**
 - a. Economical insulation thickness
 - b. Pay-back time
- **D. Environment**
- **E. Corrosion prevention**

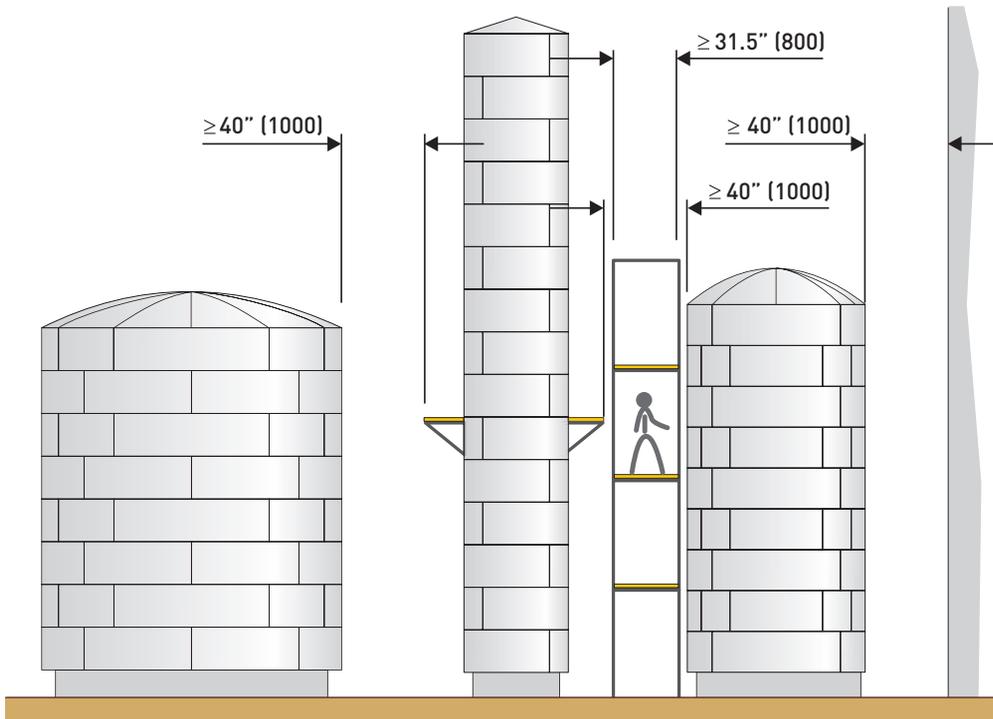
1.1 Planning and preparation

A. Functional requirements

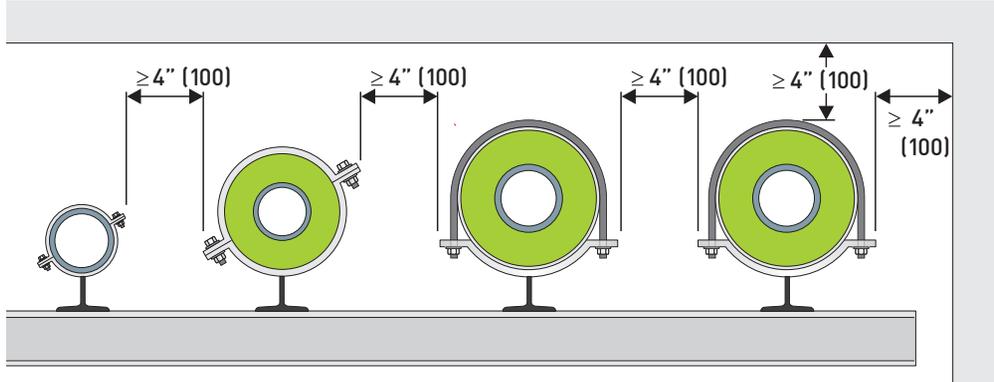
a) Object dimensions

The space requirements of the insulation must be taken into account when the installation is being designed and planned. Therefore, the insulation thicknesses should be determined in the early planning stages and the distances between the individual objects should be taken into account in the piping isometrics. To guarantee systematic installation of the insulation materials and the cladding without increased expense, observe the minimum distances between the objects as specified in the following illustrations.

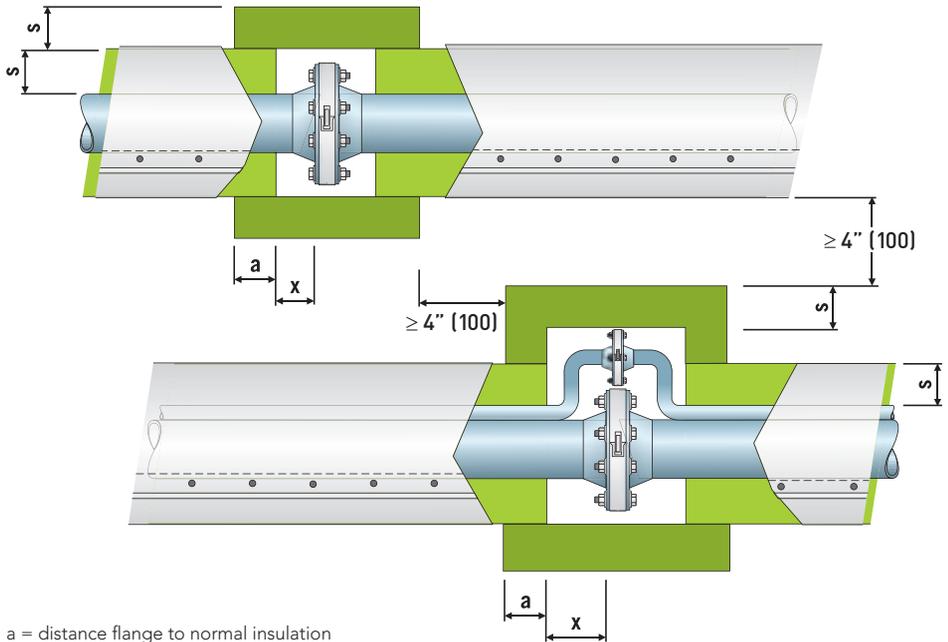
Minimum distances between vessels and columns; dimensions in inches (mm)



Minimum distances between insulated pipes; dimensions in inches (mm)



Minimum distances within range of pipe flanges; dimensions in inches (mm)



- a = distance flange to normal insulation
- a $\geq 2''$ (50 mm)
- x = bolt length + 1.2" (30 mm)
- s = insulation thickness

1.1 Planning and preparation

A. Functional requirements

b) Operation of the installation

To select a suitable insulation system, the operating method of the installation must be considered. A basic distinction is made between continuous and interrupted operation. With continuous operation, the operating temperatures are constantly above or constantly below the ambient temperatures. The interrupted operating method, also referred to as intermittent or batch operation, is characterized by the fact that the installation is switched off between each operating phase and during that time can assume ambient temperatures. For special applications, e.g. dual temperature systems, the operating temperature alternates above or below the ambient temperature.

c) Operating temperature

The appropriate insulation material should be resistant to the intended operating/peak temperatures. This product property is assessed by the maximum service temperature (also see Chapter 2.2 "Product properties & test methods").

d) Permissible heat losses or temperature changes of the medium

With many technical processes, it is essential that media in vessels, columns or tanks do not fall below a specific lower temperature limit, otherwise chemical processes will not proceed as intended or the media will set and can no longer be pumped or extracted. Over-cooling can lead to the precipitation of, for example, sulphuric acid in exhaust and flue gas streams, which promotes corrosion in the pipes or channels. With flowing media, it is essential to ensure that the temperature of the medium is still at the desired level at the end of the pipe. The thermal insulation is designed according to these requirements. Under extreme conditions (e.g. lengthy periods of storage, long transport routes or extreme temperatures), installing tracing may be necessary, to ensure that the media is kept within the required temperature limits.

Thermo-technical engineering calculation programs like NAIMA's 3E Plus® or ROCKWOOL's "Rockassist" can aid in ensuring the optimum engineering and design of these insulation systems. More information can be found on our website www.rockwool.com. For special situations please contact the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team for further guidance.



Inside buildings, uninsulated or poorly insulated parts of installations unnecessarily increase room temperatures, which can have a negative effect on the working environment - both for the people who work long hours under these conditions and for the electronic components. In addition to the increased heat loss, the need for climate controlled rooms requires further energy consumption. The design of the insulation and the related reductions in terms of heat loss from parts of installations should be relevant to the entire infrastructure and use of the building.

Rockassist thermo-technical calculation program

Go and register online for our free calculation tool

EXPERT TOOL

www.rockwool.com



Rockassist is smartphone and tablet friendly



e) Frost protection

Installations that are situated outside are at risk from frost in the winter. In addition to the malfunctioning of installations, installations also risk damage caused by the expansion of frozen water. Adequate measures against frost protection are critical to protect the installation from freezing. Insulation can reduce heat loss and aid in frost protection. Insulation alone cannot indefinitely prevent the installation from freezing. Installing additional tracing may be necessary between the object and the insulation. To prevent freezing, the insulation must be designed so the heat flow rate of the insulated object is less than the heat provided by the tracing.

f) Ambient conditions

Select an insulation system that offers long-lasting resistance to the surrounding environment.

- Atmospheric influences: wind, rain
- Mechanical loads such as vibrations or foot traffic
- Corrosive environment (proximity to sea, chemicals,...)

Moisture accumulation in insulation increases thermal conductivity and the risk of corrosion of the insulated installation components. Cladding must be installed to prevent the ingress of moisture into the system. If the ingress of moisture into the insulation is unavoidable, retain

an air space of at least 2/3" (15 mm) between the insulation and the cladding, and create 0.4" (10 mm) diameter ventilation and drain holes in the covering at intervals at a maximum of 12" (300 mm). If necessary, the insulation and cladding must resist chemical influences that develop within the environment.

Installations operating below ambient temperatures have a high risk of moisture condensing from the ambient air inside the cladding. Use a continuous vapor retarder on piping operating below ambient temperatures and seal all joints, surfaces, seams and fittings to prevent condensation (use of staples is not recommended).

g) Maintenance and inspection

To avoid complicating routine maintenance and inspection work unnecessarily, maintenance-intensive areas must be taken into account, especially when designing the insulation work. Removable insulation systems, such as removable coverings and hoods, could be fitted in such areas, for example. Easily removable covering systems are also recommended for flanges and pipe fittings. These coverings are generally fastened with quick-release clamps, which can be opened without special tools.

The insulation of fixtures such as flanges or pipe fittings must be interrupted at a sufficient distance to allow installation or dismantling to be carried out. In this case, take the bolt length at flange connections into consideration. Any fixtures in the range of the insulation, including the interruption in the installation, should be insulated with removable coverings overlapping the insulation and maintaining continuity across the fixture.

1.1 Planning and preparation

B. Safety aspects

a) Personal protection

Surface temperatures in excess of 140 °F (60 °C) can lead to skin burns, if the surface is touched. Therefore, all accessible installation components should be designed to protect personnel and prevent injuries. The insulation applied to such plant components must ensure that surface temperatures in excess of 140 °F (60 °C) do not occur during operation. Use our Thermo-technical engineering program Rockassist to determine the required insulation thickness. All of the operational parameters must be known to achieve a reliable design, including, for example, the temperature of the object, the ambient temperature, air movement, surface materials, distance from other objects, etc.

NOTE

As the surface temperature depends on a set of physical parameters, which cannot always be calculated or estimated with any degree of certainty, the surface temperature is not a guaranteed measurement. If the required protection (temperature) cannot be achieved by insulation, apply additional protective devices, such as safety guards or enclosure of the object.

b) Fire protection

The general fire protection requirements imposed on structural installations are usually defined within the local Building Codes or the specifications of plant owner. Structural installations must be designed, built, modified and maintained to prevent the outbreak of a fire and the spread of fire and smoke. In the event of a fire, the rescuing of people and animals and effectively extinguishing the fire must be made possible. During the design of the installation, it is vital to determine the nature and scope of the fire prevention measures together with the building supervisory board, the fire department, insurance companies and the operator.



As a basic principle, consider the fact that the fire load in a building or industrial installation can be considerably increased by flammable insulation materials. On the other hand, non-flammable insulation materials such as mineral wool (stone wool), which has a melting point of >2150 °F (>1,177 °C), not only have a positive impact on the fire load, but in the event of a fire, also constitute a certain fire protection for the installation component.

Installation components with tracing, in particular, which use thermal oil as a heat transfer medium, have an increased risk of catching fire in the event of a leak. In this case, ensure that the thermal oil cannot penetrate into the insulation material.

c) Explosion prevention

If there is a risk of fire and explosion, the surface temperature of the object and the cladding must be considerably lower than the ignition temperature of the flammable substance and/or gas mixtures. This requirement also applies to thermal bridges, such as pipe mounting supports, supporting structures and spacers etc. With regard to insulation systems, explosion protection can only be achieved with a doubleskin covering. A doubleskin covering is a factory made

cladding that has been welded or soldered to make it air proof and diffusion-resistant. In addition special (local) explosion regulations must be observed.



In explosive areas electrostatically charged substances like unearthed cladding or non-conductive plastics must be grounded (earthed). For further guidance please consult your local safety guidelines relating to static electricity.

d) Noise protection

The guidelines for noise in the ordinance and workplace are stated in the local regulations and standards. Generally, the level of the guideline values depends on the nature of the activity.

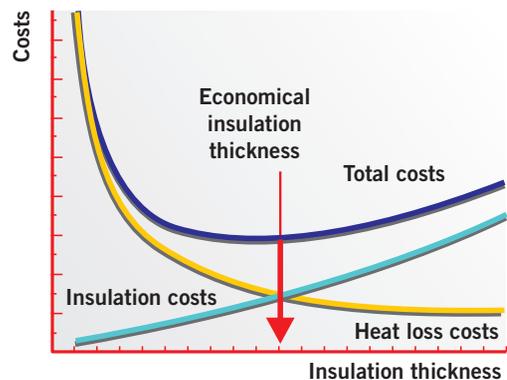
The sound propagation of installation components can be reduced using insulation systems. The nature and effect of the sound insulation depend on the frequency and the sound pressure level.

C. Economics

In the industry there are two grades of insulation. The first grade focuses on reducing heat losses and the prevention of injuries to people operating or working nearby the installations. The second grade of insulation, the so called "economical insulation thickness" focuses on significant heat loss reduction and as a result achieving a better return on investment.

a) Economical insulation thickness

Insulation reduces the heat losses from the object. The thicker the insulation, the greater the heat reduction and consequently, the more energy is saved. However, the investment and expenditure, e.g. for depreciation, interest rates and higher maintenance costs also rise if the insulation thickness is increased. At a certain insulation thickness, the sum of the two cost flows reaches a minimum. This value is known as the economical insulation thickness. A qualitative curve of a similar costs function is shown below.



The energy costs cannot be based solely on the current price. Developments over recent years indicate energy costs will continue to rise.

1.1 Planning and preparation

C. Economics

Increasing energy prices are tending to bring about a shift in economic insulation thicknesses towards larger thicknesses.

b) Pay-back time

In addition to the economical insulation thickness, another frequently used economical parameter is the return on investment period (ROI), also referred to as the payback period. This is defined as the period within which the cost of the insulation is recuperated through savings on heat loss costs.

$$\text{ROI period} = \frac{\text{Costs of the insulation}}{\text{annual saving}} \quad [\text{a}]$$

In the case of industrial insulation systems, the return on investment period is generally very short, often being much less than one year. Considering only the return on investment period, however, can be deceptive, as this approach disregards the service life of the installation. With long-life installations, it is advisable to select higher insulation thicknesses, even if this means accepting a longer return on investment period. Throughout the entire service life of the installation however, the increased insulation thickness results in a significantly higher return on the investment in insulation and achieves a much more economic operation of the installation.



D. Environmental

The burning of fossil fuels, such as coal, oil or gas, not only depletes the available primary energy sources, but also, due to the emission of carbon dioxide (CO₂) into the atmosphere, places a burden on the environment.

The increasing CO₂ concentration in the Earth's atmosphere plays a significant part in the global increase in temperature, also referred to as the "greenhouse effect". CO₂ absorbs the thermal radiation emanating from the earth's surface and in doing so reduces the dissipation of heat into space. This is leading to a change in the world's climate with as yet inestimable consequences. Reducing CO₂ emission can only be achieved through more efficient management of fossil fuels. Increasing the insulation thicknesses is essential for the reduction of CO₂ emissions.

Reducing CO₂ emissions also has a positive financial benefit for businesses within the context of an emissions trading scheme. The benefits of increased insulation thicknesses in industrial installations are twofold, as the costs for both energy consumption and CO₂ emissions are decreased.

E. Corrosion Prevention

See Chapter 1.1.3

1.1.2 Design & planning of the insulation work

Requirements for insulation work must be included in the design and construction phase of industrial plants. It is advisable to involve all project managers at an early stage to avoid unnecessary issues or delays.

All preparatory works must be completed according to the relevant insulation standards.

The following preconditions must be fulfilled:

- If necessary, work has been carried out on the object to protect against corrosion
- Tracing and technical measurement equipment have been installed
- The minimum distance between the objects has been observed (see illustrations on pages 12 and 13)
- Surfaces have no coarse impurities
- Mounting supports have been installed on the object to accommodate the support structure
- Collars and sealing discs have been fitted to the object
- Taps on the object are long enough to ensure that flanges lie outside the insulation and can be screwed on without hindrance
- Supports are designed so that insulation, water vapor retarders and cladding can be professionally installed
- The insulation can be applied without any obstacles (e.g. scaffolding)
- Welding and bonding work has been carried out on the object
- The foundations have been completed

1.1.3 Corrosion prevention

Industrial facility disruptions are due to the lack of, or inadequate forms of, protection against corrosion. This considerably reduces the service life of industrial plants, and more frequently, essential shutdown or overhaul work impairs the efficiency of the installation.

It is commonly, but wrongly, assumed that the insulation system also protects an installation against corrosion. For each installation it must be determined whether protection against corrosion is required and, if so, which are the appropriate measures.

Generally, the design of the insulation system & corrosion protection will depend on the following parameters.

- Operation of the installation
 - Continuous operation
 - Interrupted/intermittent operation
 - Operation involving varying temperatures
 - Type of plant (e.g. Petrochemical, pharmaceutical, etc)
- Operating and Ambient temperatures of the installation
- Metals and Materials Used
 - Non-alloy or low-alloy steel
 - Austenitic stainless steel
 - Copper
- External influences upon the installation
 - Environment of the installation (chemically aggressive?)
 - Location

The best practices may vary per country and/or standard. The design of corrosion protection is often carried out on the basis of a small selection of standards, such as ASTM C795, that do not adequately take into account all the specific features of protecting against corrosion in insulation systems. For further details on corrosion protection we recommend referring NACE SP0198 and the **ROCKWOOL Corrosion Under Insulation (CUI) brochure**.

1.1 Planning and preparation

1.1.3 Corrosion prevention

- In the case of cold insulation, if the object is made of non-alloy or low alloy steel, it must be protected against corrosion.
- In the case of objects made, for example, of austenitic stainless steel or copper, the installation must be tested in each individual case by the planner to determine whether protection against corrosion is necessary.
- Objects made from austenitic stainless steel do not require protection against corrosion if the temperature never – even for a short period – exceeds 120 °F (50 °C)

NOTE

Protection against corrosion should be applied in the case of all installations made from non-alloy or low-alloy steel where the operating temperatures are below 250 °F (120 °C). Protection against corrosion may be omitted in the case of:

- Installations operating continuously under extremely cold conditions [below -50 °F (-50 °C)] such storage tanks.
- Insulated surfaces of power plant components, such as boiler pressure components, flue gas and hot air ducts and steam pipe systems with operating temperatures that are constantly above 250 °F (120 °C).

If austenitic stainless steel is insulated with any type of insulation - For temperatures of up to 930 °F (500 °C), aluminum foil of not less than .06 mm thick to be applied to the steel surface, arranged to shed water with overlaps of not less than 2" (50 mm) at the joints.

CINI Manual "Insulation for industries"

CINI recommends applying corrosion protection prior to the insulation work at any time.

- In all phases, pay attention to CUI (corrosion under insulation) prevention: design, construction, paint & coating work, application of the insulation system, inspection and maintenance. Equipment and piping sections like nozzles, supports etc. should be designed and maintained to prevent ingress of water into the insulation system.
- The "paint" specifications are split up into:
 - Construction material (carbon steel, stainless steel)
 - Temperature ranges from -22 °F (-30 °C) to 1000 °F (540 °C) with special attention to the temperature range between 0 °F (-20 °C) and 300 °F (150 °C).
- The corrosion protection can be achieved using aluminum foil wrapping, thermal sprayed aluminum (TSA) or paint.

Protection against corrosion may be omitted in the case of installations operating continuously under extremely cold conditions [< -22 °F (-30 °C)]

Application

Before applying corrosion protection coating, the surface must be free from grease, dust and acid and, for better adhesion, the priming coat should be roughened. Blasting is recommended as a surface preparation method (with austenitic stainless steel, use a ferrite free blasting abrasive). Observe the corresponding processing guidelines of the coating manufacturer. If metals with different electrochemical potentials, such as aluminum and copper, come into contact with one another, there is a risk of electrochemical corrosion. If necessary, this can be avoided using insulating, intermediate layers such as non-metallic straps. The presence of moisture will increase the development of electrochemical corrosion.

The table further on this page, which has been derived from the standard DIN 4140, indicates the initial risks of electrochemical corrosion in cases where various combinations of metals are used.

NOTE

The table does not take into account forms of corrosion with other root causes, such as stress corrosion. For further information, see Chapter 2.2 "Product properties & test methods" – AS-Quality on page 115.

Electrochemical Corrosion Potential

| Material | | Combination material | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|----------------------|----------|----------------|------|----------------------------|--------|
| Metal | Surface ratio in proportion to combination material | Zinc | Aluminum | Ferritic steel | Lead | Austenitic stainless steel | Copper |
| Zinc | Small | - | M | M | H | H | H |
| | Large | - | L | L | L | L | L |
| Aluminum | Small | L | - | L | H | H | H |
| | Large | L | - | L | M | L | H |
| Ferritic steel | Small | L | L | - | H | H | L |
| | Large | L | L | - | L | L | L |
| Lead | Small | L | L | L | - | H | H |
| | Large | L | L | L | - | M | M |
| Austenitic stainless steel | Small | L | L | L | L | - | M |
| | Large | L | L | L | L | - | L |
| Copper | Small | L | L | L | L | L | - |
| | Large | L | L | L | L | L | - |

L - Light or little corrosion to material

M - Moderate corrosion to material, for example, in very humid atmospheres

H - Heavy electrochemical corrosion to material

Observation: The table shows the corrosion of the "material", and not that of the "combination material".

"Light" means: "small-scale in proportion to the combination material", "heavy" means: "large-scale in proportion to the combination material".

Example 1: Material is a zinc galvanized screw in combination material, a cladding made from austenitic stainless steel: Row "zinc small": "H" – heavy corrosion of the screw.

Example 2: Material, a cladding made from austenitic stainless steel screwed on with a screw galvanized with combination material zinc: Row "austenitic stainless steel large". "L" – the corrosive attack upon the austenitic steel is light.

1.1 Planning and preparation

1.1.4 Storage of insulation materials

Incorrect storage of insulation materials outdoors can cause insulation to deteriorate. Insulation should be protected when stored, during installation and when fitted to minimize moisture exposure, physical damage and contamination. If storage indoors is not possible, protect the insulation material from weather influences by covering it with waterproof material. Insulation should also be stored a minimum of four inches above ground and kept on a solid surface away from ponding water and ground moisture.

Moisture causes many types of corrosion that virtually never develop in a dry system. The major types of corrosion in relation to insulation technology are oxygen, electrochemical and stress corrosion. Insulation materials that are manufactured with properties (such as low chloride content or added inhibitors) can irrevocably lose these properties when exposed to contamination or additives are leached out.

The thermal conductivity of water is approximately 25 times greater than that of air. An increase in moisture therefore results in an increase in the thermal conductivity of the insulation and, correspondingly, a decrease in the insulation efficiency. Higher moisture can also mean a significantly higher weight, which, as a rule, is not taken into account in the static design of an insulation system. It is therefore important to protect the insulation from moisture after installation, as well as ensure insulation is thoroughly dry when installed (especially in sealed application at low temperatures or where the temperature cycles).

1. System solutions

1.2 Insulation of piping

Piping plays a central role in many industrial processes in chemical or petrochemical installations such as power plants, as it connects core components such as appliances, columns, vessels, boilers, turbines etc. with one another and facilitates the flow of materials and energy. To guarantee a correct process cycle, the condition of the media within the pipes must remain within the set limitations (e.g. temperature, viscosity, pressure, etc.). In addition to the correct isometric construction and fastening of the piping, the piping insulation also has an important function. It must ensure that heat loss are effectively reduced and that the installation continues to operate economically and functionally on a permanent basis. This is the only way to guarantee the maximum efficiency of the process cycle throughout the design service life without losses as a result of faults.

Requirements for industrial piping

The basic efficiency and productivity factors of piping for the processing industry include: energy efficiency, dependability and reliability under different conditions, functionality of the process control, appropriate support structure suitable for the operating environment, as well as mechanical durability. The thermal insulation of piping plays a significant role in fulfilling these requirements.

Thermal insulation

The functions of proper thermal insulation for piping include:

- Reduction of heat losses (cost savings)
- Reduction of CO₂ emissions
- Frost protection
- Process control: ensuring the stability of the process temperature
- Noise reduction
- Condensation prevention
- Personnel protection against high temperatures



ProRox® products for pipe insulation

ROCKWOOL offers a wide range of high-quality stone wool insulation products for the insulation of industrial plants. These products are part of our extensive ProRox® range for industrial insulation. With this specific field of application in mind we developed our pre-formed pipe sections and pipe wrap (mat) products for pipe insulation. All these products are easy to install and contribute to a high level of efficiency, functionality and reduced heat losses. Continuous internal and external inspection and high levels of quality assurance ensure the consistently high quality of all ROCKWOOL products.

The examples of use below cannot fully take into account the particular circumstances of the construction-related factors. Determine whether the products are suitable for the corresponding application in each individual case. If in doubt, consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

The applicable standards and regulations must also be observed. A few examples follow:

- NACE SP0198 (Control of corrosion under thermal insulation and fireproofing materials - a systems approach)
- MICA (National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards)
- DIN 4140 (Insulation works on technical industrial plants and in technical facility equipment)
- AGI Q101 (Insulation works on power plant components)
- CINI-Manual "Insulation for industries"
- BS 5970 (Code of practice for the thermal insulation of pipework, ductwork, associated equipment and other industrial installations)

1.2 Insulation of piping

Hot insulation systems

Principally, a thermal insulation structure for piping consists of an appropriate insulating material, usually covered by sheet metal cladding. This protects the object and the insulation from external influences such as the weather and mechanical loads. Spacers are also essential with insulation such as wired mats, which do not offer sufficient resistance to pressure to hold the weight of the cladding and other external loads. These spacers transfer the cladding loads directly onto the object. In the case of vertical piping, support structures are fitted to take on the loads of the insulation and the cladding. In general, support structures and spacers form thermal bridges.

Selecting a suitable insulation system depends on numerous parameters. These are described in greater detail in Chapter 1.1. Regarding the different forms of pipe insulation, a fundamental distinction can be drawn between the following insulation systems.

Insulation with pipe sections

Generally, the best insulation is achieved using ProRox® Pipe Sections and can be used up to temperatures of 1400 °F (760 °C) when using ProRox® PS 980^{NA} Type V insulation. They are supplied ready split and hinged for quick and easy snap-on assembly and are suitable for thermal and acoustical insulation of industrial pipe work. Due to their excellent fit and high compression resistance, pipe sections can often be applied in a single layer without any additional spacers. If multiple layers are required, ROCKWOOL can also supply double layered - 'nested' - pipe sections. This reduces installation costs considerably. Also the number of thermal bridges, which have a negative influence on the insulation, is greatly reduced, while a lower thickness may be applied compared to wired mats.

Using pipe sections for the insulation of pipes results in considerably reduced installation time and costs. The lack of spacers and "unforeseen"

gaps minimizes heat losses and the risk of personal injuries due to hot spots on the cladding. At temperatures above 550 °F (300 °C), the provisional application of spacers must be determined in each individual case.

Pipe sections are always precisely tailored to the corresponding pipe diameter to minimize the risk of convection and processing defects.

ROCKWOOL pipe sections are available in diameters of NPS 1/2" (23 mm) to NPS 28" (713 mm).



Insulation with load-bearing pipe wraps (mats)

Load-bearing pipe wraps (mats), such as ProRox® MA 960^{NA} are the latest development in the insulation sector. ProRox® MA 960^{NA} is a stone wool (mineral wool) insulation wrap available with a black mat or reinforced foil facing and is designed for easy installation of large diameter pipes. Typical applications include:

- pipe diameters >NPS 12" (326 mm), or;
- piping with a high number of shaped pieces such as elbows or T-joints.

ProRox® MA 960^{NA} can be applied up to temperatures of 1200 °F (650 °C). It is highly compression resistant and can be applied without any additional spacers.

Consequently the number of thermal bridges,

which have a negative influence on the insulation, is greatly reduced.

The result is considerably reduced installation



Pipe insulation with wired mats has been a time-tested universal solution for many decades now. Due to their flexibility and high temperature resistance, wired mats can be easily cut and mounted onto piping. Wired mats are ideal for application in situations where the use of pipe sections or load bearing wraps (mats) is difficult or impossible. Historically this included large diameter pipes and high temperatures (where the wired mat provided structural integrity to the insulation at high temperatures), but advanced modern ProRox® pipe section and ProRox® pipe wraps (mats) have provided a suitable alternative to wired mats. Wired mat is still used today in piping with a high number of shaped pieces such as elbows or T-joints.

Wired mats have a relatively low resistance to pressure and from a practical point of view should only be mounted in combination with spacers or support structures. Because of the resulting thermal bridges, better insulation performances are often achieved in the lower and middle temperature range [up to 550 °F (300 °C)] with pipe sections or load bearing wraps (mats).

time and costs. The lack of spacers and “unforeseen” gaps minimizes heat losses and the risk of personal injuries due to hot spots on the cladding. Pipe wraps (mats) are tailored to the corresponding length of the pipe circumference on site and are fastened with clamps.

Insulation with wired mats

Wired mats, are lightly bonded stone wool wraps (mats), usually stitched with galvanized wire onto a galvanized wire mesh. For more details on ProRox® wired mat insulation products, contact your ROCKWOOL representative.



1.2 Insulation of piping

Comparison of the different insulation systems

The particular advantage of pipe sections and pipe wraps (mats) lies in the fact that support structures are not required and therefore thermal bridges caused by the insulation are minimized or removed. On the other hand, wired mat systems have their advantages due to their ability to be structurally sound when insulating around irregularly shaped pipe sections.

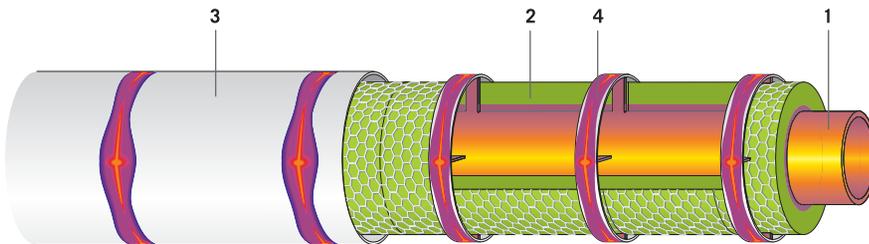
The advantages of pipe sections and load-bearing pipe wraps (mats) at a glance are:

- It is not necessary to install spacers or support structures.
- Faster application without the interference of spacers.
- Both products offer an even, firm surface for installing the sheet cladding.

- The lack of spacers gives rise to lower heat losses.
- It yields an even surface temperature across the sheet cladding.
- In comparison to wired mats, a more shallow insulation thickness can be applied.
The operating costs of the installation decrease as a result of lower heat loss.

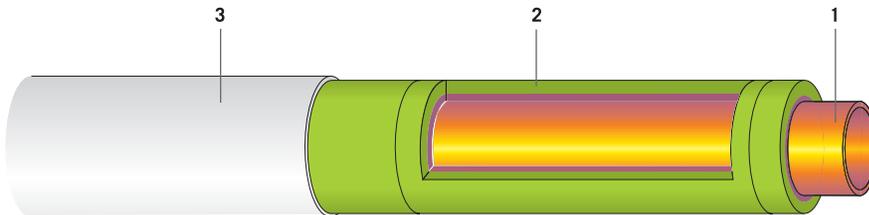
Generally speaking, a spacer or support structure functions as a thermal bridge, as a result of which the heat loss in the total insulation is increased considerably.

Insulation system with a spacer ring



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Wired Mats - 3. Cladding - 4. Spacer ring

Insulation system without a spacer ring



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Pipe Sections or Pipe Wraps (Mats): ProRox® MA 960^{NA} - 3. Cladding

Required insulation thicknesses

If the three insulation systems are compared, taking into consideration similar heat losses, clear advantages are seen with regard to the insulation thicknesses with systems using pipe sections or pipe wraps (mats). These do not use spacers, in contrast to insulation systems made using wired mats. The table below shows the required insulation thicknesses taking into account the following boundary conditions:

- Medium temperature: 480 °F (250 °C)
- Ambient temperature: 50 °F (10 °C)
- Wind speed: 1.1 mph (5 m/s)
- Cladding: Aluminum
- Heat loss: 150 BTU/ft.hr (150 W/m)
- Application of spacers in the case of wired mats

| Pipe Diameter | | | Minimum Insulation Thickness | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------|
| | | | Pipe sections | Pipe wraps (mats) | Wired mats |
| NPS (inch) | Nominal diameter Ø DN | Pipe diameter (mm) | ProRox® PS 960 ^{NA} | ProRox® MA 960 ^{NA} | Wired mats |
| | | | inch | inch | |
| 2 | 50 | 60 | 1 " | n.a. | n.a. |
| 3 | 80 | 89 | 1 " | n.a. | n.a. |
| 4 | 100 | 108 | 1.5 " | n.a. | n.a. |
| 6 | 150 | 159 | 2 " | n.a. | n.a. |
| 8 | 200 | 219 | 2.5 " | n.a. | 5 " |
| 10 | 250 | 273 | 3 " | n.a. | 6 " |
| 12 | 300 | 324 | 4 " | 4 " | 7.5 " |
| 14 | 350 | 356 | 4.5 " | 4.5 " | 8 " |

 Multiple layer insulation

n.a. = not applicable

1.2 Insulation of piping

Selection of pipe insulation systems

Generally, the best insulation is achieved using ProRox® Pipe Sections. The preformed sections are quick and easy to install. Their excellent fit and high compression resistance means pipe sections can be applied in a single layer without any additional spacers. They also have a lower insulation thickness. Pipe wraps (mats), are usually applied for the insulation of large pipe diameters and can be applied to shaped pieces like elbows and T-joints.

Generally speaking, a spacer or support structure functions as a thermal bridge, as a result of which the heat loss in the total insulation is increased considerably.

The design of an insulation system depends upon many factors such as the dimensions, mechanical loads, safety aspects, economics, etc.

Consequently this also requires a considered selection of the insulation material.

Comparison

ProRox® pipe sections and pipe wraps (mats) offer the advantage that spacers are generally not required.

- ProRox® pipe sections and pipe wraps (mats) are applied more quickly without the interference of spacers.
- Both products offer an even, firm surface for installing the cladding.
- The lack of spacers creates lower heat loss.
- It yields an even surface temperature across the cladding.
- In comparison to wired mats, a more shallow insulation thickness can be used. With a same insulation thickness, the operational costs of the installation decrease as a result of lower heat losses.

1.2.1 Insulation with pipe sections

Generally, the best insulation is achieved using ProRox® Pipe Sections. The sections can be used up to temperatures of 1400 °F (760 °C) when using ProRox® PS 980^{NA} Type V insulation. They are supplied ready split and hinged for quick and easy snap-on assembly and are suitable for thermal and acoustic insulation of industrial pipe work. Their excellent fit and high compression resistance means pipe sections can be applied in a single layer without any additional spacers or support structures. Consequently the number of thermal bridges, which have a negative influence on the insulation, is greatly reduced, while a low thickness may be applied compared to wired mats. The result is considerably reduced installation time and costs. The lack of spacers and “unforeseen” gaps minimizes heat loss and the risk of personnel injuries due to hot spots on the cladding.

At temperatures above 550 °F (300 °C), the provisional application of spacers must be determined in each individual case. ProRox® Pipe Sections are available in a wide range of diameters, ranging from NPS 1/2" (23 mm) to 36" (914 mm)

NOTE

Due to their low thermal conductivity, better thermal insulation values can be achieved with pipe sections than with wired mats. With insulation on straight pipe sections, a combination of both products in the same insulation thickness is therefore not advisable. If this combination is essential, for example, in the case of bends or shaped pieces, it is vital to select the correct insulation thickness. This is the only way to guarantee that no unexpected, potentially hazardous surface temperatures occur.

Insulation thicknesses to guarantee protection against contact

The table below is an initial guide to help select suitable insulation thicknesses for the guards.

It is based on the following boundary conditions:

- Ambient temperature: 75 °F (25 °C)
- Wind speed: 1.1 mph (0.5 m/s)
- Cladding: Aluminum
- Maximum surface temperature: 140 °F (60 °C)
- Insulation: ProRox® PS 960^{NA} pipe sections

| Pipe Diameter | | | Temperature | | | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| NPS (inch) | Nominal diameter Ø DN | Pipe diameter (mm) | <250 °F (<120 °C) | 300 °F (150 °C) | 350 °F (175 °C) | 400 °F (200 °C) | 450 °F (230 °C) | 500 °F (260 °C) | 550 °F (290 °C) | 600 °F (315 °C) |
| | | | inch | inch | inch | inch | inch | inch | inch | inch |
| 1 | 25 | 33 | 0.5" | 0.5" | 0.5" | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1" | 1" |
| 2 | 50 | 60 | 0.5" | 0.5" | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 1.5" |
| 3 | 80 | 89 | 0.5" | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 1.5" | 2" |
| 4 | 100 | 114 | 0.5" | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 1.5" | 2" |
| 6 | 150 | 168 | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 1.5" | 2" | 2" |
| 8 | 200 | 219 | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 1.5" | 1.5" | 2" | 2.5" |
| 10 | 250 | 273 | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 1.5" | 2" | 2" | 2.5" |
| 12 | 300 | 324 | 0.5" | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 1.5" | 2" | 2" | 2.5" |

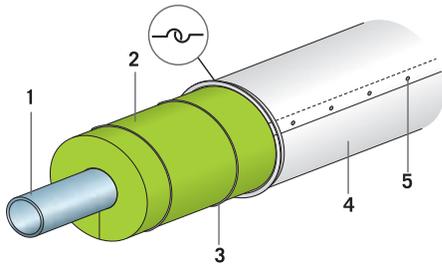
The thicknesses mentioned above should be seen as an indication. In the event of differing boundary conditions, please contact the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team. The thermo-technical engineering program "Rockassist" or NAIMA 3E Plus® can be used to design the insulation according to the specific requirements.

1.2 Insulation of piping

Installation

Before starting the insulation works, ensure that all preparatory work on the object has been completed. Refer to Chapter 1.1 for details.

The ProRox® PS 900 Series pipe sections are mounted directly onto the pipe to form a close fit. With horizontal pipes, the lengthwise joint of the pipe section should be turned towards the underside at the 6 o'clock position. With vertical pipes, the lengthwise joints should be staggered at an angle of 30 ° to one another. Secure the pipe sections with galvanized binding wire or with steel bands. With an insulation thickness exceeding 5 inches (120 mm) [or temperatures > 550 °F (300 °C)], install the insulation in at least two layers. If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered.



1. Pipe -
2. Insulation: ProRox® Pipe Sections -
3. Clamp or binding wire -
4. Sheet cladding -
5. Sheet-metal screw or rivet

Support structures and spacers

Spacers are not generally essential in insulation systems with pipe sections. With pipes that are exposed to large mechanical loads (e.g. strong vibrations) and/or temperatures above 550 °F (300 °C), determine whether a spacer ring is required in each individual case.

With pipes that have been installed vertically, with a height in excess of 13 feet (4 m), fit support structures to transfer the dead load of the insulation system onto the pipe. Attach the first support ring to the lowest point of the vertical pipe. The distance between the support rings should not exceed approximately 13 feet (4 m).

1.2.2 Insulation with pipe wraps (mats)

Pipe wraps (mats), such as ProRox® MA 960^{NA} are the latest development in the insulation business. ProRox® MA 960^{NA} is a stone wool insulation wrap available with black mat or reinforced foil facing. The flexible application makes the product easy to cut and install. Pipe wraps (mats) are ideal for installations involving large diameter pipes and a high number of shaped pieces such as elbows or T-joints.

ProRox® MA 960^{NA} can be applied up to temperatures of 1200 °F (650 °C). Due to the high compression resistance, pipe wraps (mats) can be applied without additional spacers in many cases. Consequently, the number of thermal bridges which have a negative influence on the insulation, is greatly reduced.

The result is considerably reduced installation time and costs. The lack of spacers minimizes heat loss and the risk of personal injuries caused by hot spots on the cladding. Pipe wraps (mats) are precisely tailored to the corresponding length of the pipe circumference on site and are fastened with clamps.

Insulation thicknesses to guarantee protection against contact

The table below is an initial guide to help select suitable insulation thicknesses for the guards. It is based on the following boundary conditions:

- Ambient Temperature 75 °F (25 °C)
- Wind speed: 1.1 mph (0.5 m/s)
- Cladding: Aluminum
- Maximum surface temperature: 140 °F (60 °C)
- Insulation: ProRox® PS 960^{NA}

| Pipe Diameter | | | Temperature | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| NPS (inch) | Nominal diameter Ø DN | Pipe diameter (mm) | <250 °F (<120 °C) | 300 °F (150 °C) | 400 °F (200 °C) | 500 °F (260 °C) | 600 °F (315 °C) |
| | | | inch | inch | inch | inch | inch |
| 12 | 300 | 324 | 0.5" | 1" | 1.5" | 2" | 2.5" |
| 16 | 400 | 406 | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 2" | 3" |
| 20 | 500 | 508 | 1" | 1" | 1.5" | 2.5" | 3" |

The thicknesses mentioned above should be seen as an indication.

In the event of differing boundary conditions, please contact the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team. The thermo technical engineering program "Rockassist" or NAIMA 3E Plus® can be used to design the insulation according to the specific requirements.

1.2 Insulation of piping

Installation

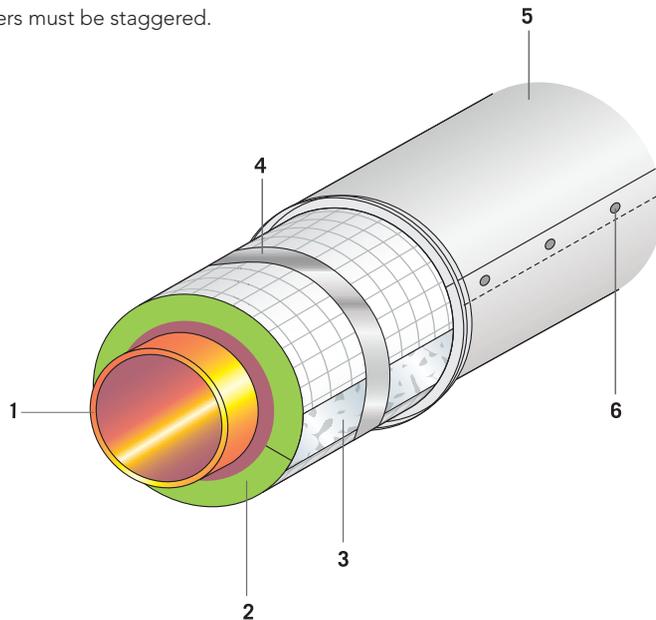
Before starting the insulation works, ensure that all preparatory work on the object has been completed. Refer to Chapter 1.1 for details.

Cut the wraps (mats) to the required length, based on the external insulation diameter (pipe diameter + two times the insulation thickness). Fasten the wrap (mat) firmly to the pipe with steel bands. Ensure that the wraps (mats) form a tight joint and that no lengthwise joints or circular joints are visible. The joints of the individual wraps (mats) are securely taped with self-adhesive aluminum tape. If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered.

Support structures and spacers

Spacers are not generally essential in insulation systems with load bearing wraps (mats). With pipes that are exposed to large mechanical loads (e.g. strong vibrations), determine whether a spacer ring is required in each individual case.

With pipes that have been installed vertically, with a height in excess of 14 feet (4 m), fit support structures to transfer the dead load of the insulation system onto the pipe. Attach the first support ring to the lowest point of the vertical pipe. The distance between the support rings should not exceed approximately 14 feet (4 m).



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® MA 960^{NA} - 3. Self-adhesive aluminum tape - 4. Steel bands - 5. Sheet cladding - 6. Sheet-metal screw or rivet

1.2.3 Insulation with wired mats

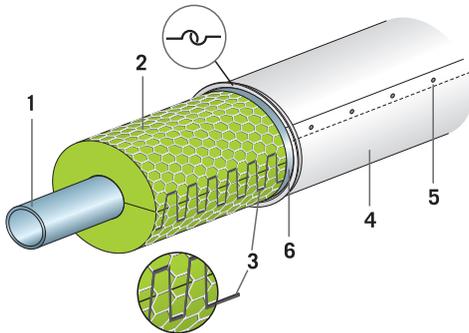
Pipe insulation with wired mats has been a time-tested universal solution for many decades now. Due to their flexibility and high temperature resistance, wired mats can be easily cut and mounted onto the piping. These wired mats are ideal for application on large pipe diameters and shaped pieces as elbows or T-joints.

Wired mats have a relatively low resistance to pressure and from a practical point of view should only be mounted in combination with spacers. Because of the resulting thermal bridges, better insulation performances are often achieved in the lower and middle temperature range [up to 550 °F (300 °C)] with pipe sections or load bearing wraps (mats) rather than with wired mats.

Installation

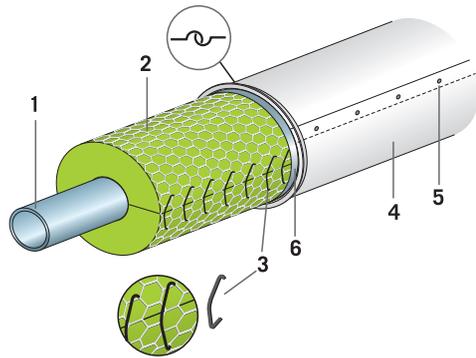
Before starting the insulation works, ensure that all preparatory work on the object has been completed. Refer to Chapter 1.1 for details.

Cut the wrap (mat) to a length so that it can be fitted to the pipe with slight pre stressing. Wire the closing joints (lengthwise and circular) of the wraps (mats) together using steel wire or secure with wrap (mat) hooks. Stainless steel pipes and pipes with an operating temperature > 750 °F (400 °C) can only be insulated with wired mats with stainless steel stitching wire and wire netting to prevent galvanic corrosion cracking.



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Wired Mats - 3. Stitching of the joint edge with binding wire - 4. Sheet cladding - 5. Sheet-metal screw or riveted bolt - 6. Spacer ring

With an insulation thickness of more than 5 inches (120 mm) [or temperatures > 550 °F (300 °C)], apply multiple layer insulation. If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the lengthwise and crosswise joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered. If mechanical loads are anticipated, use steel straps to secure the wired mats.



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Wired Mat- 3. Joint edge closed with mat hooks - 4. Sheet-metal cladding - 5. Sheet-metal screw or riveted bolt - 6. Spacer ring

Support structures and spacers

As wired mats do not offer sufficient resistance to pressure to bear the weight of the cladding, spacer or support structures should be applied. More information can be found in 1.2.4.

With pipes that have been installed vertically, with a height in excess of 14 feet (4 m), fit support structures to transfer the dead load of the insulation system onto the pipe. Attach the first support ring to the lowest point of the vertical pipe. The distance between the support rings should not exceed approximately 14 feet (4 m).

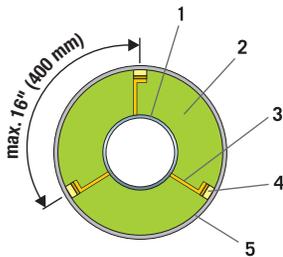
1.2 Insulation of piping

1.2.4 Insulation support

A. Spacers

The purpose of spacers is to keep the cladding at a predetermined distance from the pipe. Spacers are essential when the insulation (e.g. wired mats) cannot bear the mechanical load of the cladding. The use of spacers is generally not necessary if pipe sections or pipe wraps (mats) are used. Consideration should be given to support structure or spacers on pipes where mechanical loading (e.g. strong vibrations) of the insulation is expected and/or the temperature is higher than 550 °F (300 °C).

Spacer rings usually consist of metal rings on which the sheet cladding rests, and metal or ceramic bars used as spacers, which rest on the pipe. Elastic spacers such as Omega clamps are frequently used to reduce the transference of vibrations. With steel spacers, apply at least three bars, whereby the maximum distance – measured as circumference of the external ring – must be a total of maximum 16 inch (400 mm). With ceramic spacers, apply at least four bars at a maximum permissible distance of 16 inch (400 mm).

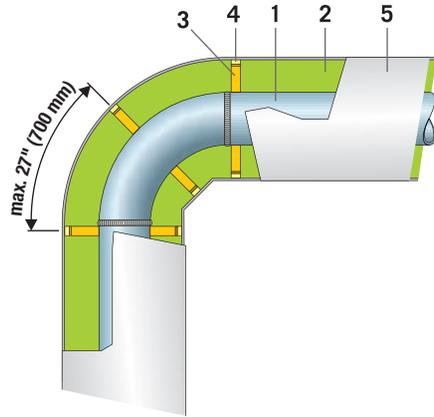


1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Spacer - 4. Thermal dividing layer - 5. Support ring

Dimension spacers of support construction

The number of spacers depends on the insulation, temperature and the mechanical load. Use the following intermediate distances as a guide.

| Insulation system | Horizontal piping | | Vertical piping | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| | ≤ 550 °F | > 550 °F | ≤ 550 °F | > 550 °F |
| Pipe sections | none | 10 to 13 ft | none | 16 to 20 ft |
| Load bearing wraps (mats) | none | 10 to 13 ft | none | 16 to 20 ft |
| Wired mats | 3.3 ft | 3.3 ft | 3.3 ft | 16 to 20 ft |

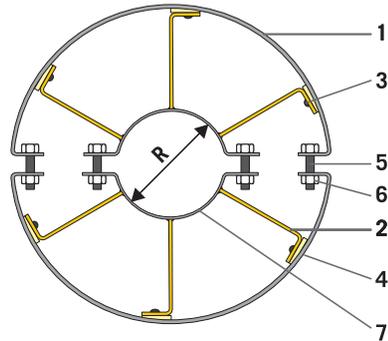


1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Spacer - 4. Thermal dividing layer - 5. Cladding

The spacers on pipes are located under the circular joint of the cladding. On shaped sections such as pipe elbows, spacers are fitted at the start and at the end. If the external distance between the two spacers exceeds 27 inch (700 mm), place additional spacers between the two.

B. Support construction

The purpose of support structures is to transfer the mechanical load of the insulation system and the forces affecting the insulation system onto the object. Support structures are essential in the case of vertical piping. In addition to the static and dynamic forces, changes in piping length and support structures due to temperature must also be taken into account when dimensioning. Support structures are fastened to mounting supports, which are welded to the pipe beforehand, or are mounted directly onto the pipe via a clamping action with so-called double clamping rings. With temperatures above 650 °F (350 °C), the support structures must be made of high-temperature steels.



1. Support ring - 2. Bar - 3. Rivet or screw connection - 4. Thermal decoupling - 5. Clamping screw - 6. Screw nut - 7. Internal clamping ring

The table below is an initial dimensioning guide, and shows the weight of the insulation system against the nominal width of the pipe and the insulation thickness. The table accounts for an insulation with an apparent density of 6 lb/ft³ (100 kg/m³), including the spacer and a 0.20 inch (1.0 mm) strong galvanized sheet.

Weight of the insulation (lb/ft pipe)

| Pipe Diameter | | | Units of weight of insulation system | Insulation Thickness (inch) | | | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| NPS (inch) | Nominal diameter Ø DN | Pipe diameter (mm) | | 1.00 | 1.50 | 2.00 | 2.50 | 3.00 | 4.00 | 5.00 | 6.00 |
| 0.5 | 15 | 21 | lb / ft | 0.3 | 0.5 | 0.8 | 1.1 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 3.7 | 5.2 |
| 1.0 | 25 | 34 | lb / ft | 0.5 | 0.7 | 1.0 | 1.4 | 1.8 | 2.8 | 4.1 | 5.7 |
| 2.0 | 50 | 60 | lb / ft | 0.8 | 1.1 | 1.5 | 1.9 | 2.4 | 3.6 | 5.0 | 6.7 |
| 2.5 | 65 | 76 | lb / ft | 1.0 | 1.3 | 1.7 | 2.2 | 2.7 | 4.0 | 5.5 | 7.2 |
| 3.0 | 80 | 89 | lb / ft | 1.2 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 4.3 | 5.9 | 7.7 |
| 4.0 | 100 | 114 | lb / ft | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 3.6 | 5.1 | 6.8 | 8.7 |
| 8.0 | 200 | 219 | lb / ft | 2.9 | 3.6 | 4.4 | 5.2 | 6.1 | 8.1 | 10.3 | 12.8 |
| 12.0 | 300 | 324 | lb / ft | 4.4 | 5.3 | 6.3 | 7.4 | 8.5 | 11.0 | 13.8 | 16.8 |
| 20.0 | 500 | 508 | lb / ft | 7.2 | 8.6 | 10.2 | 11.8 | 13.5 | 17.0 | 20.8 | 24.8 |
| 28.0 | 700 | 711 | lb / ft | 10.0 | 12.0 | 14.0 | 16.2 | 18.4 | 22.9 | 27.8 | 32.9 |
| planar surface | | | lb / ft ² | 1.3 | 1.6 | 1.8 | 2.1 | 2.3 | 2.8 | 3.3 | 3.8 |

1.2 Insulation of piping

1.2.5 Cladding

Suitable cladding should be applied to protect the insulation from weather influences, mechanical loads and (potentially corrosive) pollution. Selecting the appropriate cladding depends on various factors, such as working loads, foot traffic, wind and snow accumulations, ambient temperatures and conditions.

NOTE

An insulation system resistant to foot traffic must not become permanently damaged if a person weighing 220 lbs (100 kg), (weight including any tools being carried) walks across it. It is not designed to bear additional loads, such as the placing of heavy equipment. For the purpose of the safety regulations, a durable insulation is not considered to be a walkable surface.

When selecting the appropriate cladding, take the following points into account:

- As a general rule, galvanized steel is used in buildings due to its mechanical strength, fire resistance and low surface temperature (in comparison to an aluminum cladding).
- Aluminum is used outdoors, because it is easy to fit and more cost-effective than stainless steel and does not tend to corrode under common weather conditions.
- In corrosive environments, aluminized steel, stainless steel or glass reinforced polyester is used as cladding. Stainless steel is recommended for use in environments with a fire risk.
- The surface temperature of the cladding is influenced by the material type. The following applies as a general rule: the shinier the surface, the higher the surface temperature.
- To exclude the risk of galvanic corrosion, only use combinations of metals that do not tend to corrode due to their electrochemical potentials (also see page 21 in Chapter 1.1).
- For acoustic insulation, a noise absorbent material (bitumen, mylar foil) is mounted on the insulation or inside the cladding. To reduce the risk of fire, limit the surface temperatures of the cladding to the maximum operating temperature of the noise absorbent material.

| Cladding material | Areas at risk of fire | Corrosive environment | Max. surface temperature | | |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| | | | < 120 °F (50 °C) | < 140 °F (60 °C) | > 140 °F (60 °C) |
| Aluminum sheet | - | - | | | ● |
| Aluminum/zinc coated steel sheet | - | - | | | ● |
| Galvanized steel sheet | ● | - | | | ● |
| Austenitic stainless steel sheet | ● | ● | | | ● |
| Aluminized steel sheet | ● | ● | | | ● |
| Plastic-coated steel or aluminum | - | - | | ● | |
| Glass fiber-reinforced polyester (e.g. ProRox® GRP 1000) | - | ● | | | < 190 °F (90 °C) |
| Coatings/mastics | - | - | | | 175 °F (80 °C) |
| Foils | - | - | ● | | |

The thickness of the metal sheet depends on the pipe diameter and the type of the metal. With special acoustic requirements, a larger thickness [> 0.04 " (1 mm)] is generally used.

Recommended sheet thickness and overlaps regarding cladding made from flat sheets (CINI)

| External diameter of the insulation (in) | Minimum thickness (inches) of metal cladding sheet (recommended by CINI) | | | | |
|--|--|--------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| | Aluminum (CINI 3.1.01) | Aluminized steel sheet (CINI 3.1.02) | Alu-Zinc coated steel sheet (CINI 3.1.03) | Zinc coated steel sheet (CINI 3.1.04) | Austenitic stainless steel sheet (CINI 3.1.05) |
| < 5.5" | 0.024 | 0.022 | 0.020 | 0.020 | 0.020 |
| 5" to 12" | 0.031 | 0.031 | 0.031 | 0.031 | 0.031 |
| > 12" | 0.039 | 0.031 | 0.031 | 0.031 | 0.031 |

The recommended sheet thickness deviates to a certain level per standard/country. The thickness recommended by CINI is shown in the table above (values converted to inches). See page 148 in Chapter 3.2.2 for the thickness according to DIN 4140 and BS 5970.

To reduce the risk of galvanic corrosion, it is important to use the correct screws, straps etc. See the table on page 21 for more information.

The basic guidelines are:

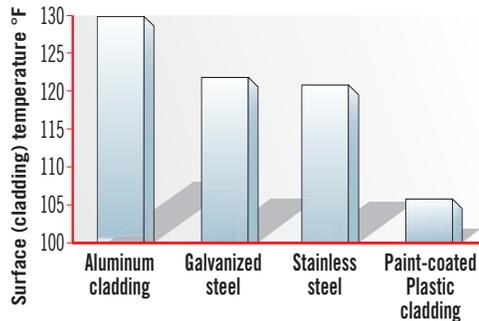
- Fasten sheet cladding on lengthwise joints with at least six sheet metal screws or blind rivets every meter.
- Place the screws or blind rivets equidistant. If screws or rivets are fitted in two rows, do not stagger the screws or rivets.
- The cladding can also be held in place with corrosion-resistant straps instead of screws or rivets.
- Do not use aluminum screws.

Influence of the cladding on the surface temperature

In addition to the insulation thickness, the thermal conductivity of the insulation and the ambient conditions (for example temperature and wind), the surface temperature of insulation is also influenced by the emission ratio (emissivity) of the cladding.

The following applies as a general rule for thermal insulation: the shinier a surface is (lower emissivity), the higher the surface temperature. The following example shows the various surface temperatures that depend on the cladding:

- Diameter: 4 1/2" (114 mm)
- Temperature of the medium: 930 °F (500 °C)
- Place of installation: Interior [Wind speed 1.1 mph (0.5 m/s)]
- Insulation: ProRox® MA 960^{NA} pipe wrap (mat), thickness 4" (100 mm)
- Various cladding materials
 - Aluminum sheet
 - Galvanized steel sheet, bright
 - Stainless steel
 - Paint-coated plastic cladding



1.2 Insulation of piping

1.2.5 Cladding

Cladding in corrosive environments

To guarantee the functionality of industrial/mechanical insulation (sometimes referred to as technical insulation), it is important to protect it against atmospheric influences and prevent the ingress of moisture into the insulation. Moisture in the insulation system increases thermal conductivity, thereby reducing the effectiveness of the thermal protection. It also poses a high risk of corrosion to the component. In certain applications, the cladding system is also expected to offer chemical resistance, as well as being resistant to cleaning methods such as steam blasting. Alongside the insulation and construction, selecting a suitable cladding system is very important as it forms the basis for a long service life, low maintenance costs and low heat loss of an industrial/mechanical insulation. ROCKWOOL offers ProRox® GRP 1000, an innovative fiberglass polyester cladding system.



ProRox® GRP 1000 – a durable protection for insulation

ProRox® GRP 1000 is a fiberglass reinforced polyester wrap, which hardens when exposed to ultraviolet (UV) light. The material contains resins, glass fibers and a special filling agent and is (unprocessed) protected against UV rays by foils on both sides.

ProRox® GRP 1000 is soft and flexible when unprocessed. It can be cut or trimmed in any shape and easily mounted onto the insulation in this state.

The polyester then hardens when exposed to ultraviolet (UV) light. Once hardened, ProRox® GRP 1000 is watertight* and forms a mechanical protection for the insulation.

The advantages:

■ Long service life:

ProRox® GRP 1000 creates a sealed, watertight cladding for ROCKWOOL insulation systems. This minimizes damage caused by atmospheric influences or general wear and tear. ProRox® GRP 1000 is resistant to many chemical substances and forms a mechanical protection for the insulation.

■ Easy to clean:

Insulation systems cased in ProRox® GRP 1000 can be cleaned with steam-jet air ejectors, without the risk of water penetrating the insulation and causing damage.

■ Low start-up costs:

The cutting and processing take place directly on site. This avoids costs associated with prefabrication of steel cladding.

■ Flexible applications:

ProRox® GRP 1000 can be used for cold and thermal insulation of underground and aboveground pipes, for example in offshore plants. Its high flexibility enables application on complex, shaped objects.

ProRox® GRP 1000 is characterized by easy processing. It can be cut easily using a knife directly on site and, as an unhardened ProRox® GRP 1000 wrap (mat) is highly flexible, it can be simply shaped to cover complex geometric shapes such as pipe elbows, T-joints or pipe fittings. ProRox® GRP 1000 has a protective foil on both sides. It is supplied in rolls in cardboard packaging. The roll is also wrapped in black foil that is resistant to UV light. The underside (the side facing the object) is covered with a dark foil and has a rough, self-adhesive surface. The flat surface of the outside is covered with a white foil. After each use, place the roll in the sealed cardboard packaging to minimize the risk of hardening caused by daylight or UV light.

* Watertight as defined by product data sheet values.

ProRox® GRP 1000 requires a dry, clean (ventilated) work environment. For outdoor applications, tents should be erected if necessary, to protect the unhardened ProRox® GRP 1000 wrap (mat) from UV light.

NOTE

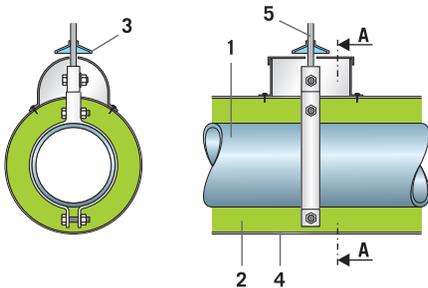
- High temperatures: ProRox® GRP 1000 can be used in temperatures of up to 190 °F (90 °C).
- Chemical resistance: ProRox® GRP 1000 is resistant to numerous chemicals.
- Expansion joints: fit expansion joints to accommodate expansion of the ProRox® GRP 1000 material and the steel pipe.

1.2.6 Pipe hangers and pipe supports

There is a wide range of solutions for pipe hangers and pipe supports. The following illustrations show the possibilities described below for insulation systems:

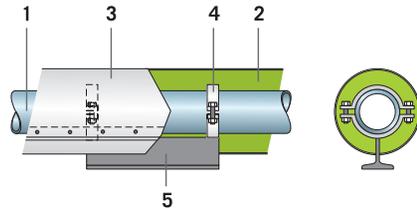
- Pipe hangers in direct contact with the piping
- Pipe supports in direct contact with the piping
- Pipe supports not in direct contact with the piping (commonly used with cold insulation systems)

Pipe hangers in direct contact with the piping



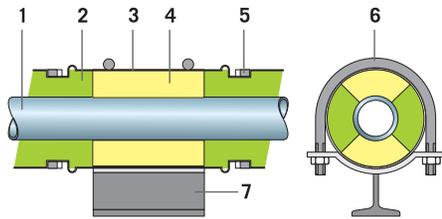
1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Pipe Sections -
3. Collar - 4. Sheet cladding - 5. Pipe hanger

Pipe support in direct contact with the piping



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® PS 960^{NA} – pipe section -
3. Sheet cladding - 4. Pipe clamp - 5. Pipe saddle

Pipe support not in direct contact with the piping



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® PS 960^{NA} pipe sections -
3. Sheet cladding - 4. Load-bearing insulation - 5. Seal -
6. Stirrup - 7. Pipe saddle

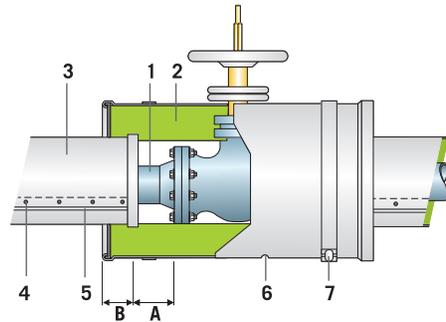
A basic rule applying to all pipe attachments is that the insulation system (e.g. the insulation and cladding) must not be damaged if the piping expands. Damage to the cladding of outdoor installations, in particular, can allow the ingress of moisture in the material. The result may be permanent damage of the insulation system and as a consequence high heat losses, dangerously high surface temperatures and corrosion etc.

1.2 Insulation of piping

1.2.7 Insulation of valves and flanges

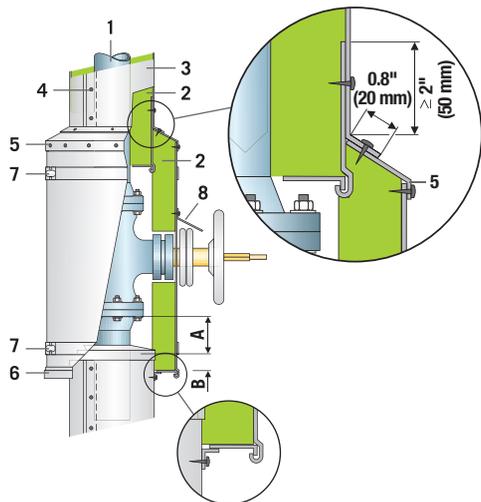
Heat loss incurred through non insulated fixtures such as valves and flanges are substantial, even at low temperatures. An uninsulated valve located outside loses as much heat at 250 °F (120 °C) as 100 ft (30.5 m) of uninsulated piping. The temperature of the medium can also decrease to such an extent at non-insulated fittings or flanges, that process critical temperatures are reached, at which point for example, the medium will start to crystallize. Valves and flanges should therefore be insulated as much as possible. To avoid damage during inspection or repairs, the insulation for valves and flanges is designed with removable coverings or hoods, to allow rapid disassembly. Removable coverings or hoods are usually insulated from the inside with wired mats or flexible ProRox® insulation (FSL Series). The coverings are fastened to the object with lever fastenings, which are fixed directly onto the covering or on to straps. Take the following conditions into account when designing insulated coverings for fittings and flanges:

- The overlap distance of the insulated covering over the insulated pipe should be at least 2" (50 mm).
- The pipe insulation should end at the flanges, leaving a gap equal to the bolt length + 1.2" (30 mm) and should be closed off with a lock washer so the flange can be loosened without damaging the insulation.
- With valves, an extended spindle should preferably be fitted horizontally or below the pipe to prevent leakage along the spindle shaft.
- The cladding must be fitted to prevent the ingress of moisture in the insulation. On inclined or vertical piping, for example, mount rain deflectors above the removable coverings. If the ingress of moisture into the insulation is unavoidable, make 0.4" (10 mm) diameter drain holes in the removable covering.

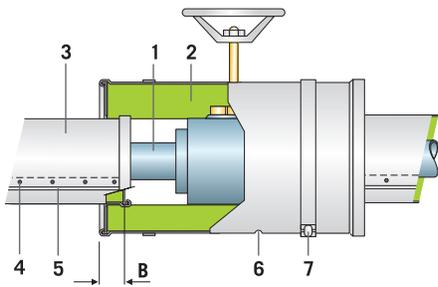


1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation -
3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or Rivet -
5. Swage - 6. Drainage opening -
7. Strap - $B \geq 2"$ (50 mm) - $A = \text{bolt length} + 1.2"$ (30 mm)

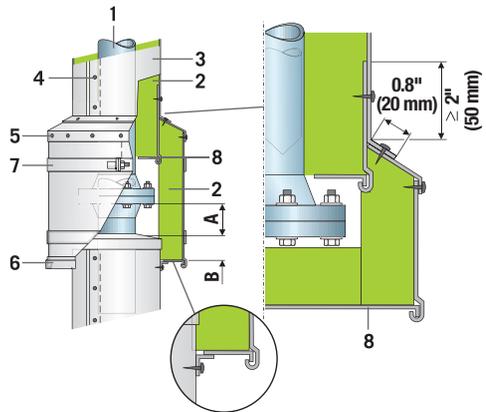
A number of possible design options for insulation systems for pipe fittings and flanges follow:



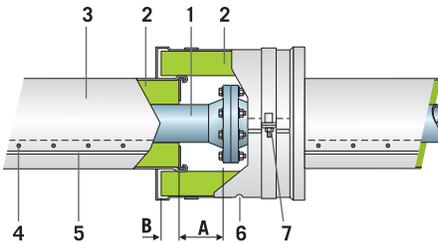
1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Rain deflector - 6. Lock washer - 7. Straps - 8. Rain deflector -
- $B \geq 2"$ (50 mm) - $A = \text{bolt length} + 1.2"$ (30 mm)



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Swage - 6. Drainage opening - 7. Straps – $B \geq 2"$ (50 mm)



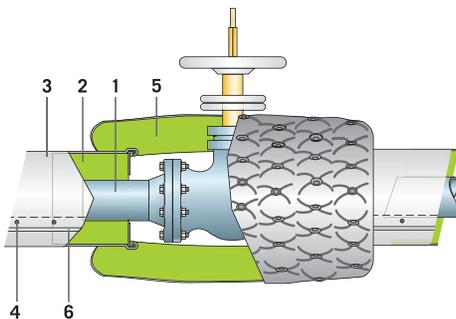
1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Sheet - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Rain deflector - 6. Lock washer - 7. Straps - 8. Lock washer - $B \geq 2"$ (50 mm) - A = Screw length + 1.2" (30 mm)



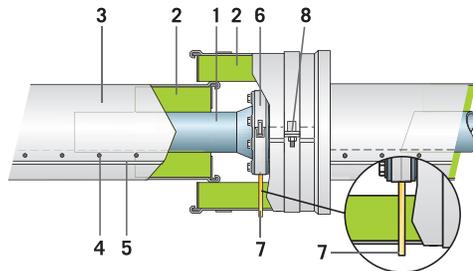
1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Swage - 6. Drainage opening - 7. Straps – $B \geq 2"$ (50 mm) - A = Bolt length + 1.2" (30 mm)

Leakages

With pipes where a leaking fluid content could damage the insulation or the coating system in the removable covering, mount flange straps with a leak detection fitting around the flange. Flange bands can also prevent flammable products from penetrating into the insulation material and can help prevent the outbreak of fire.



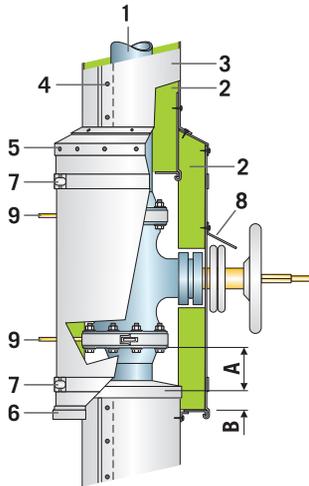
1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Pipe Sections - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Removable coverings (insulated from the inside) - 6. Swage



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Swage - 6. Flange band - 7. Leak detection fitting - 8. Clamps

1.2 Insulation of piping

1.2.7 Insulation of valves and flanges



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Collar - 6. Collar - 7. Clamps - 8. Rain deflector - 9. Leak detection fitting - $B \geq 2"$ (50 mm) - $A = \text{bolt length} + 1.2"$ (30 mm)

1.2.8 Insulation of pipe elbows and T pieces

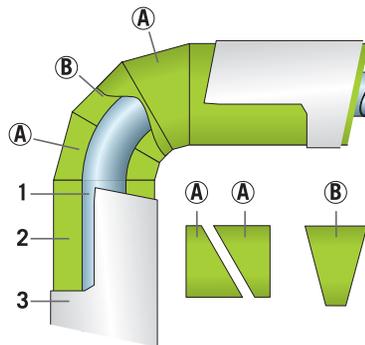
The cladding of elbows and T-pieces is susceptible to damage, due to expanding or vibrating pipes. There is a particular risk of moisture penetrating damaged swage connections in the cladding, if the object is located outdoors.

For the insulation of shaped pieces, we recommend using the same insulation in the same thickness as used for the pipe.

Insulation of pipe elbows with ROCKWOOL pipe sections

For the insulation of pipe elbows with pipe sections (e.g. ProRox® PS 960^{NA}), the pipe sections are cut into segments and tightly fitted onto the pipe elbow with the lengthwise joints facing downwards. The angular division of the segments should correspond to the radius of the pipe

elbow. The pipe section segments are fastened to the pipe elbow with clamps or binding wire. Joints between the individual segments are plugged tightly with loose ROCKWOOL insulation.



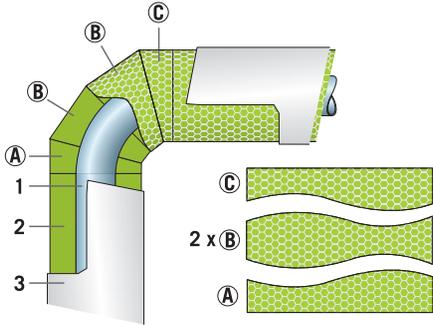
1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Pipe Sections - 3. Cladding - A and B = Segmented pipe sections

Insulation of pipe elbows with wired mats or ProRox® pipe wraps (mats)

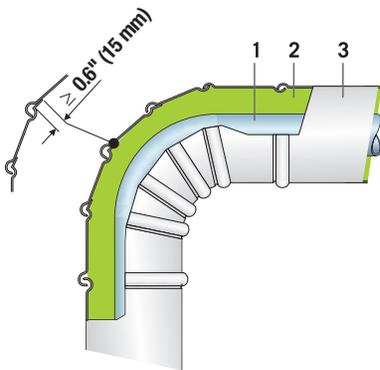
If the piping is insulated with wired mats or pipe wraps (mats), shaped pieces such as pipe elbows or T-pieces are generally insulated with the same wraps (mats). In this case, the wraps (mats) are cut into so-called fish-shaped elbow segments. These are mounted onto the pipe elbow to seal the elbow. With wired wraps (mats), all the joints (both circular and lengthwise joints) are sewn together with binding wire or wrap (mat) hooks. Spacers are required at least at the start and end of the elbow (for more details, please see page 34).

Pipe wraps (mats) are fixed to the pipe elbow with metal or plastic straps. Any gaps between the individual segments should be plugged with insulation. Secure the joint edges with self-adhesive aluminum tape.

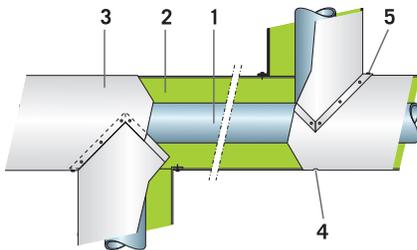
The diagrams below show how the sheet is mounted onto shaped pieces.



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - A to C: Elbow segments of wraps (mats)



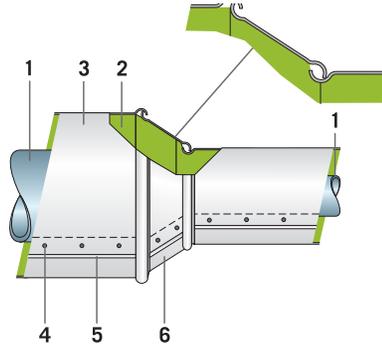
1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding



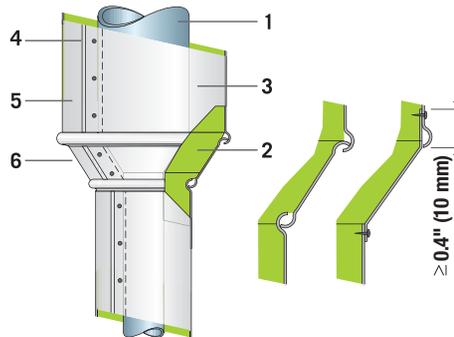
1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Drainage opening - 5. Edging with mastic compound

1.2.9 Reducers

Pipes that branch out with many outlets reduce the pipe diameter. Examples of how to install reducers follow:



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Swage - 6. Reducer



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Swage - 6. Reducer

1.2 Insulation of piping

1.2.10 Expansion joints

In thermal insulation systems, large differences between the piping and the cladding temperature can occur. The materials used for the pipe, insulation, insulation support and cladding also have different thermal expansion coefficients. This leads to different thermal elongations of the various components in the insulation system, which must be allowed for using constructive measures. The elongation “ Δl ” can be determined as follows:

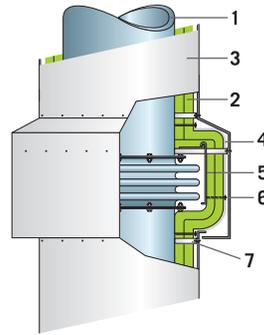
$$\Delta l = l \cdot \Delta t \cdot \alpha$$

In this formula, l corresponds to the length of the pipe, Δt corresponds to the difference in temperature between the cold and warm pipe (or cladding) and α corresponds to the linear thermal expansion coefficient (see tables in Chapter 3).

Example for the thermal elongation of steel

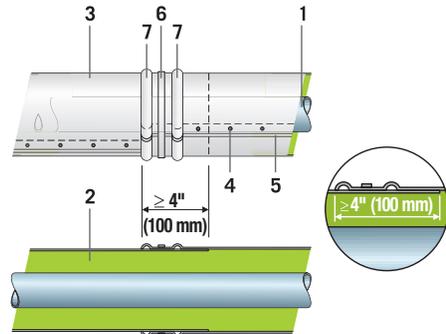
| Δl (inch per foot) | Δt (°F) | Δt (°C) |
|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 0.004 | 50 | 28 |
| 0.008 | 100 | 56 |
| 0.012 | 150 | 83 |
| 0.016 | 200 | 111 |

If bellow expansion joints for thermal length compensation have been built into the pipe, the insulation system will also bellow along with the pipe movements, potentially compromising the insulation. The expansion bellows are covered with a sheet that is then insulated (see diagrams on the right). With temperatures above 550 °F (300 °C), do not use galvanized sheets due to the risk of galvanic corrosion (cracking).



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding -
4. Aluminum foil - 5. Cover sheet - 6. Wrap (mat) pin with clip - 7. Spacer

To compensate for thermal expansion of the cladding, install the expansion joints shown below.



1. Pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding -
4. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 5. Swage -
6. Metal strap - 7. Circumferential seam

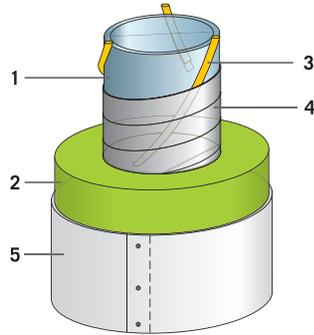
1.2.11 Tracing

When media are transported over long distances, in particular, the media inside the piping can spoil, set or be at risk from frost in the winter. Insulation can reduce heat losses and postpone the moment at which the installation freezes. Insulation alone, however, cannot indefinitely prevent the installation from freezing. Installing additional tracing may be necessary between the object and the insulation.

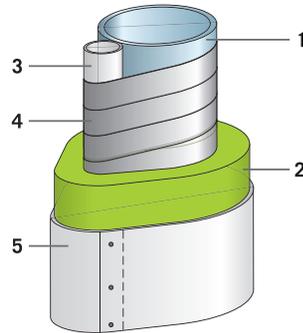
A distinction is made between pipe tracing and electrical tracing. In pipe tracing systems, a heating pipe is fitted parallel and close to the media pipe. Steam, warm water or thermal oil flows through the tracing pipes as a heat transfer medium. Electrical tracing consists of cables mounted onto the pipes. These cables heat the pipes

Traced pipes can be insulated with pipe sections or wraps (mats). Ensure that no insulation occupies the space between the tracing and the pipe; otherwise the heat transfer will be hampered. Pipes are therefore often wrapped in aluminum foil. If pipe sections are used, select a correspondingly larger internal diameter of the pipe section. With vertical piping, sealing the end of each pipe section with loose ROCKWOOL insulation is recommended to prevent convection (chimney effect).

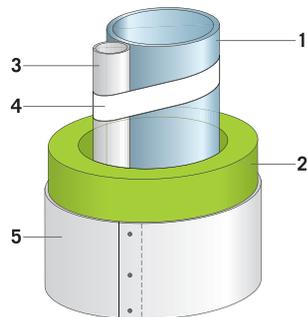
The diagrams on the right show various design options.



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Pipe Sections -
3. Electrical tracing - 4. Aluminum foil - 5. Cladding



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® MA 960^{NA} or Wired Mats
- 3. Tracing - 4. Aluminum foil - 5. Cladding



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Pipe Sections -
3. Tracing - 4. Binding tape - 5. Cladding

1.2 Insulation of piping

1.2.12 Foot traffic

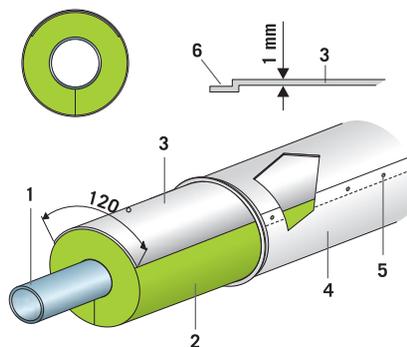
Avoid walking on insulated pipes, as this can damage the insulation. Damage caused by foot traffic includes dented sheet cladding and gaps at the sheet seams. Water can penetrate the insulation through these gaps and cause lasting damage to the entire insulation system. The result is often greater heat losses and corrosion.

NOTE

An insulation system resistant to foot traffic must not become permanently damaged if a person weighing 220 lbs (100 kg), (weight including any tools being carried) walks on it. It is not designed to bear additional loads, such as the placing of heavy equipment. For the purpose of the safety regulations, a durable insulation is not considered to be a walkable surface.

In special applications, reinforcing the cladding is recommended, e.g. using a reinforcement sheet.

Pipe insulation systems resistant to foot traffic require an insulation material with a high mechanical strength (e.g. ProRox® PS 980^{NA} pipe sections). Using other insulation materials such as wired mats, which are not resistant to pressure, is not recommended, as the sheet cladding only rests on the spacers and tends to dent when walked upon.



1. Pipe - 2. Insulation: ProRox® PS 980^{NA} Pipe Sections - 3. Reinforcement sheet (may not be required) - 4. Cladding - 5. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 6. Joggle

1. System solutions

1.3 Insulation of vessels

Vessels are a major component in installations for various procedures in almost all fields of industry.

Many production processes require different substances that are stored in vessels and used in the individual processes later in the procedure. The vessels primarily store liquid, solid or gaseous substances, which are added to the process when required. Raw materials, fuels or end products are usually stored in large storage tanks.

It is often important to store the substances within certain temperature limits. If the temperature is too high or too low, the substance can spoil or set, or lose its flowing properties and become incapable of being pumped or discharged. Insulation is therefore a major factor in the functionality of procedural processes. It also has the following purposes:

- Reduces heat loss
- Aids protection against contact by minimizing the surface temperature
- Reduces cooling of the stored substance, so it remains fluid and does not set
- Prevents the vessel from freezing (with additional tracers)
- Prevents heating of the stored substance (for example, through solar radiation)

The vessels used in the different industrial processes are so varied that the examples of use cannot fully take into account the particular circumstances of each case.

Determine whether the products and construction described are suitable for the corresponding application in each individual case. If in doubt, consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

The applicable standards and regulations must also be observed. A few examples follow:

- ASTM C1696 "Standard Guide for Industrial Insulation Systems"
- NACE SP0198 (Control of corrosion under thermal insulation and fireproofing materials - a system approach)
- ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code"
- MICA "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards"
- DIN 4140 (Insulation works on industrial plants and building services installations)
- AGI Q05 (Construction of industrial plants)
- AGI Q101 (Insulation works on power plant components)
- CINI-Manual: "Insulation in industry"
- BS 5970 (Code of practice for thermal insulation of pipe work, equipment and other industrial installations)
- PIP (Process Industry Practices)

NOTE

Before starting the insulation works, ensure that all preparatory work on the object has been completed. Refer to Chapter 1.1 for details.

Insulation systems for vessels

An insulation system for a vessel generally consists of the following components:

- Insulation
- Support construction and a spacer
- Water vapor retarder with cold insulation systems
- Cladding

The actual operating temperature (above or below ambient) is essential for the design of the insulation work. The following chapters concentrate on hot insulation.

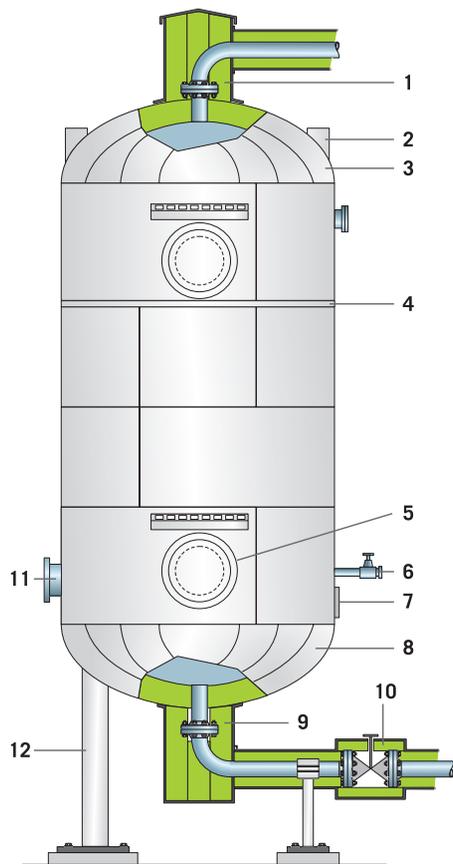
1.3 Insulation of vessels

Selection and installation of the insulation

Selecting the appropriate insulation depends on the operating method, the installation temperature, the dimensions and the location of the vessel.

Typically recommended insulation materials are ProRox® wraps (mats) and ProRox® flexible and semi rigid boards (slabs) like the SL 920^{NA}, SL 930^{NA} and ProRox® MA 960^{NA}.

Since vessels are often located outdoors, it is important to select insulation with a low thermal conductivity and excellent water repellent properties. The insulation is usually fastened to the cylindrical vessels with steel straps. These should be made from stainless steel and should be closed with butterfly nuts or quick release fasteners. The strap measurements and intervals for cylindrical objects shown in the table on the next page have proved useful in many projects.



- 1. Vessel inlet - 2. Crane hooks - 3. Vessel head -
- 4. Expansion joint - 5. Manhole - 6. Tapping point -
- 7. Identification board - 8. Vessel base - 9. Vessel outlet
- 10. Fitting insulation - 11. Flange - 12. Vessel leg

| Minimum radius ProRox® insulation boards (slabs) | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|-----|----|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| Product | Insulation thickness (inches) | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | 1.5 | 2 | 2.5 | 3 | 3.5 | 4 | 5 |
| ProRox® SL 920 ^{NA} | 16 | 21 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 72 | 84 |
| ProRox® SL 930 ^{NA} | 16 | 22 | 32 | 42 | 60 | 66 | 76 | 100 |
| ProRox® SL 960 ^{NA} | 20 | 30 | 48 | 66 | 92 | 100 | 100 | 120 |
| ProRox® MA 960 ^{NA} | | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | |

| External insulation diameter | Internal insulation layer strap measurement | External or single layer insulation strap measurement | Distance between straps |
|------------------------------|---|---|-------------------------|
| 8" to 72" (200 to 1800 mm) | 1/2" x 0.02" (13 x 0.5 mm) | 5/8" x 0.02" (16 x 0.5 mm) | 10" (250 mm) |
| > 72" (1800 mm) | 5/8" x 0.02" (16 x 0.5 mm) | 3/4" x 0.02" (19 x 0.5 mm) | 10" (250 mm) |

These values can only be used as reference values. In each individual case, determine whether different strap measurements and intervals should be used.

If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered (e.g. masonry bond pattern).

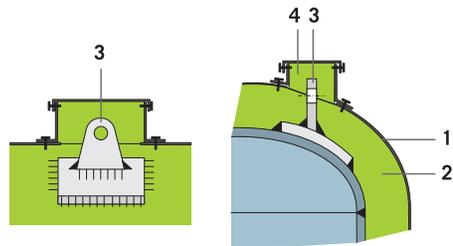
For semi-rigid boards (slabs) and wired mats usually used to insulate vessels with flat vertical walls the insulation is attached with welding pins and spring plates. On flat surfaces, attach the wired mats using minimum 5 pins per board (or 6 pins per m²), and a minimum of 8 pins per board (or 10 pins per m²) on the underneath. Observe the following when pinning the insulation:

- With insulation thicknesses ≤ 5" (120 mm), use 8GA (6AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 0.162" (4 mm).
- With insulation thicknesses ranging from 5 1/2" to 10" (130 to 240 mm), use 6GA (4AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 0.2043" (5 mm).
- With insulation thicknesses ≥ 10" (240 mm) use 4GA (3AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 1/4" (6 mm).
- If the cladding rests directly on the insulation without a gap between the two, the pins must be 3/8" (10 mm) shorter than the insulation thickness.
- Fasten each insulation layer with clips.

With wired mats, all the lengthwise and crosswise joints must be sewn or wired together, or joined with 2 mat hooks per foot. If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered.

The following illustrations show a number of typical methods of insulating vessels.

Insulation of a crane hook

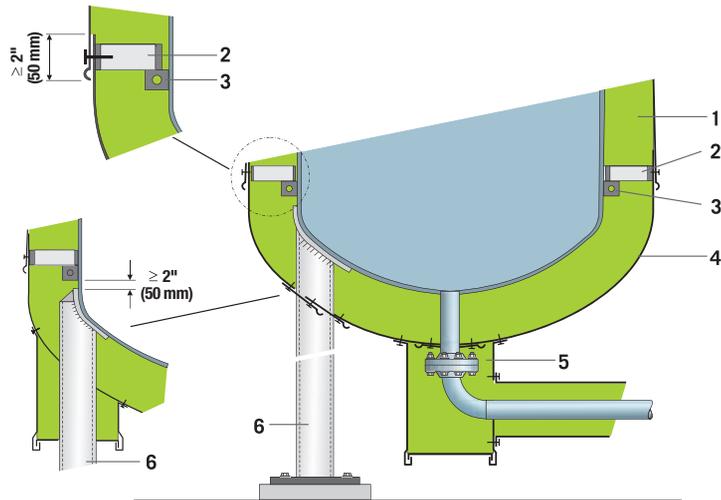


1. Cladding - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Crane hooks -
4. Insulation covering for the crane hook

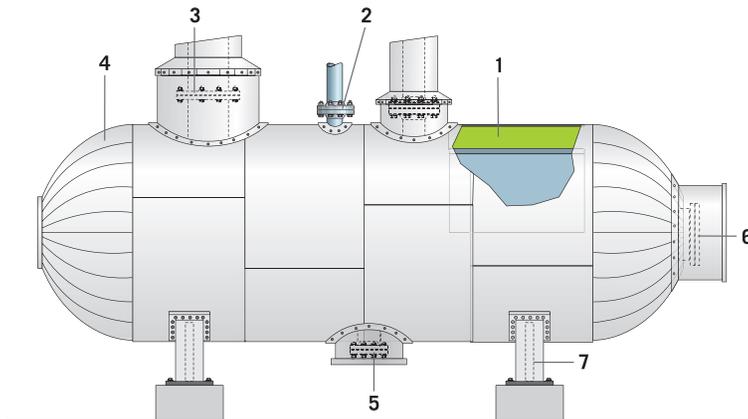
1.3 Insulation of vessels

Selection and installation of the insulation

Insulation of a vessel base

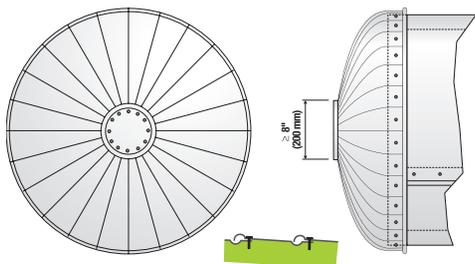


1. ProRox® insulation - 2. Support construction - 3. Mounting support - 4. Conical column head - 5. Vessel outlet - 6. Vessel leg

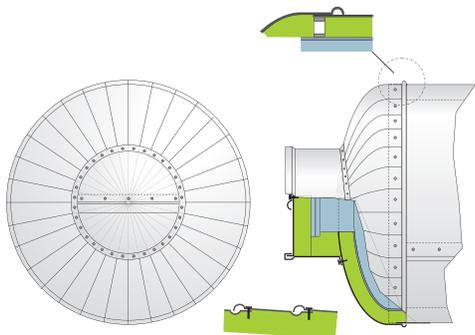


1. ProRox® load bearing insulation - 2. Flange inlet for safety valve - 3. Vessel filling nozzles - 4. Conical head - 5. Vessel drawdown - 6. Conical head with manhole - 7. Vessel leg

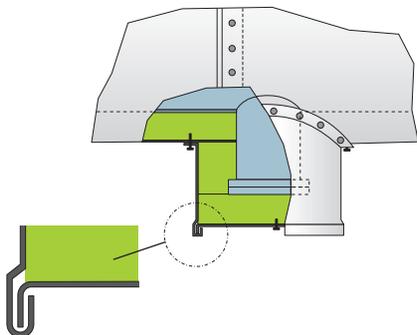
Insulation of a conical head



Insulation of a conical head with a manhole



Insulation of vessel outlet



Support constructions and spacers

The application of support constructions and spacers on vessels is essential. The objective of support constructions is to bear the weight of the insulation system and to bear the weight above mounting supports on the object to be insulated. The spacers keep the cladding of the insulation at a predetermined distance. On vertical pipes, the substructures often assume the function of the support construction and spacer. The design specifications are illustrated in Chapter 1.4. The corresponding requirements for support constructions and spacers can be found in MICA National Insulation Standards and the AGI guidelines Q153 and 154.

Before commencing the insulation works, fit mounting supports to the vessels to which the support constructions are fitted. The shape, construction and measurements of mounting supports for support constructions must enable the insulation to be fitted during assembly. If desired use the design loads specified in DIN guidelines 1055-4 and 1055-5 to dimension the mounting supports and the support constructions and spacers.

Cladding

The cladding of vessels protects the insulation against mechanical influences and the weather. There is a wide range of different flat and profiled sheets available. See Chapter 3.2 for an overview. Flat sheets are primarily used to clad smaller vessels. With large-scale insulation systems, flat sheets can only bear small, static loads exerted by the wind. It is therefore essential to reduce the distance between the support structures.

The result will be a higher number of support structures and thermal bridges. On large surfaces, flat sheets are more likely to buckle or dent, leading to optical damages, than profiled sheets. To improve the stability and optical characteristic, the sheets can be canted diagonally (cambered).

1.3 Insulation of vessels

Selection and installation of the insulation

Preferably use profiled sheets for vessels with a large surface area. They offer structural advantages and can accommodate expansions that are perpendicular to the direction of the swage. The disadvantage is that pipe protrusions are more complex from a structural perspective. Using profiled sheets is only recommended with cladding with a low number of protrusions. Design profiled sheet casings so that rainfall is deflected safely.



Cladding in moist or corrosive environments

To guarantee the functionality of industrial/mechanical insulation, it is important to protect it against atmospheric influences and prevent the ingress of moisture into the insulation. Moisture in the insulation system increases thermal conductivity, thereby reducing the effectiveness of the thermal protection. It may also increase the risk of corrosion to the component. In certain applications, the cladding system is also expected to offer chemical resistance, as well as being

resistant to cleaning methods such as steam blasting. Alongside the insulation and construction, selecting a suitable cladding system is very important as it forms the basis for a long service life, low maintenance costs and low heat loss of a industrial/mechanical insulation.

ROCKWOOL has developed an innovative cladding system for industrial/mechanical insulation: ProRox® GRP 1000.

ProRox® GRP 1000 – for durable protection

ProRox® GRP 1000 is a fiberglass reinforced polyester wrap, which hardens when exposed to ultraviolet (UV) light. The material contains resins, glass fibers and a special filling agent and is protected against UV rays by foils on both sides.

ProRox® GRP 1000 is soft and flexible when unprocessed. The polyester then hardens when exposed to ultraviolet (UV) light. Once hardened, ProRox® GRP 1000 is waterproof and forms a mechanical protection for the insulation. Please see Chapter 1.2. for more details about processing ProRox® GRP 1000.

1. System solutions

1.4 Insulation of columns

Columns are pillar-shaped vessels, which are mainly used in the (petro) chemical industry for distillation or the extraction of substances. They often form the key elements in chemical or petrochemical plants. The processes in columns often only operate at certain temperatures. The insulation of columns plays an important role in their functionality.

- Reduces heat loss
- Aids protection against contact by minimizing the surface temperature
- Reduces the cooling of the stored substance, so it remains fluid and does not set
- Ensures the column remains at the necessary process temperatures
- Prevents heating of the stored substance (for example, through solar radiation)

The columns used in the different industrial processes are so varied that the examples of use below cannot fully take into account the particular circumstances of the construction-related factors. Determine whether the products and construction described are suitable for the corresponding application in each individual case. If any doubt, consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

The applicable standards and regulations must be observed. A few examples follow:

- ASTM C1696 "Standard Guide for Industrial Insulation Systems"
- NACE SP0198 (Control of corrosion under thermal insulation and fireproofing materials - a system approach)
- ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code"
- MICA "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards"
- DIN 4140 (Insulation works on industrial plants and building services installations)
- AGI Q101 (Insulation works on power plant components)
- CINI-Manual: "Insulation in industry"
- BS 5970 (Code of practice for thermal insulation of pipe work, equipment and other industrial installations)
- PIP (Process Industry Practices)

NOTE

Before starting the insulation works, ensure that all preparatory work on the object has been completed. Refer to Chapter 1.1 for details.

Insulation systems for columns

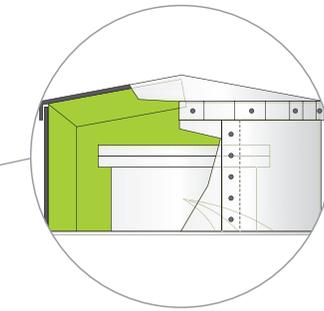
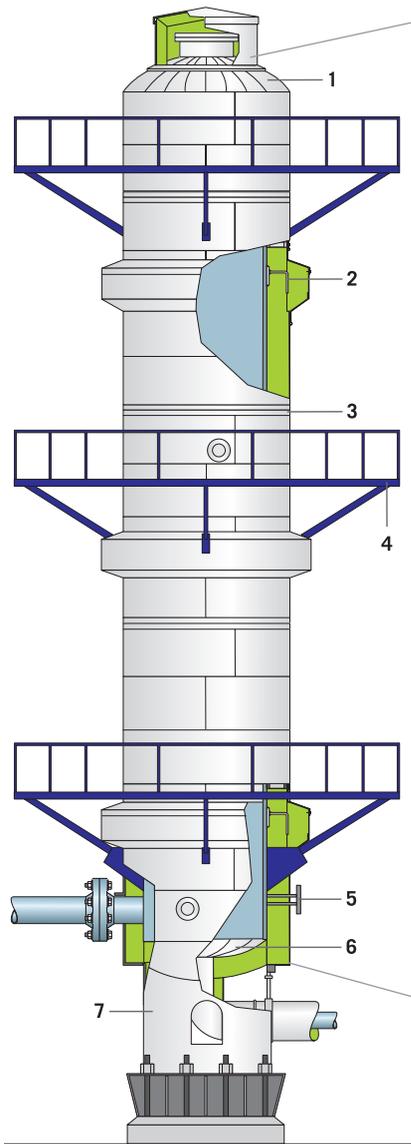
An insulation system for vessels and columns generally comprises the following components:

- Insulation
- Support construction and a spacer
- Water vapor retarder in the case of cold insulation systems
- Cladding

The temperature of the columns, in particular, has a significant impact on the optimal insulation system. This chapter focuses on the insulation of **hot columns**.

1.4 Insulation of columns

Insulation systems for columns

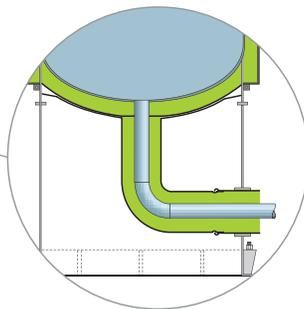


Selection and installation of the insulation

Selecting the appropriate insulation depends on the operating method, the installation temperature, the dimensions and the location of the vessel or column.

Insulation materials such as ProRox® are suitable for use of the insulation of columns.

Since columns are often located outdoors, it is important to select insulation with a low thermal conductivity and excellent water repellent properties. The insulation is usually fastened to the columns with steel straps. These should be made from stainless steel and should be closed with butterfly nuts or quick release fasteners. The strap measurements and intervals for cylindrical objects shown in the table on the next page have proved useful in many projects.

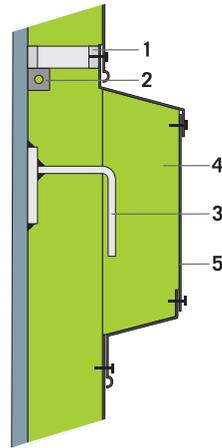


1. Column head - 2. Reinforcement ring - 3. Expansion joint - 4. Working platform - 5. Identification board - 6. Column base - 7. Column skirt

| External insulation diameter | Internal insulation layer strap measurement | External or single layer insulation strap measurement | Distance between the straps |
|------------------------------|---|---|-----------------------------|
| 8" to 72" (200 to 1800 mm) | 1/2" x 0.02" (13 x 0.5 mm) | 5/8" x 0.02" (16 x 0.5 mm) | 10" (250 mm) |
| > 72" (1800 mm) | 5/8" x 0.02" (16 x 0.5 mm) | 3/4" x 0.02" (19 x 0.5 mm) | 10" (250 mm) |

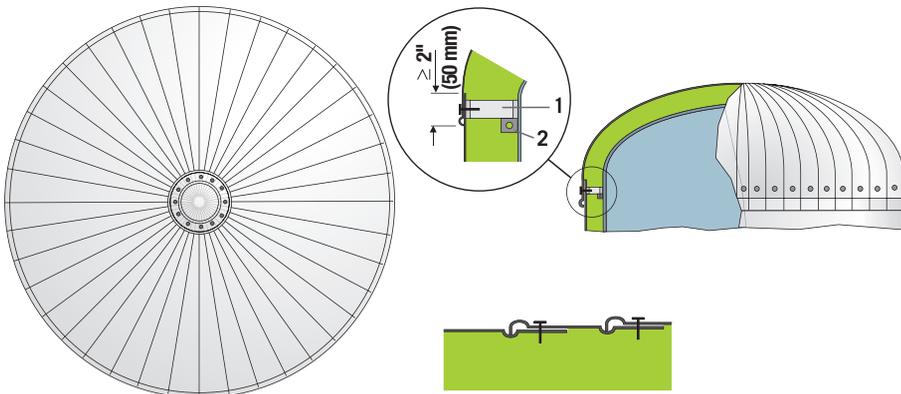
In a wide variety of applications, these values can only be used as reference values. In each individual case, determine whether different strap measurements and intervals should be used. If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered. The following illustrations show a number of typical methods of insulating columns.

Insulation of a reinforcement ring



1. Support construction - 2. Mounting support -
3. Reinforcement ring - 4. ProRox® insulation - 5. Cladding

Insulation of conical column head

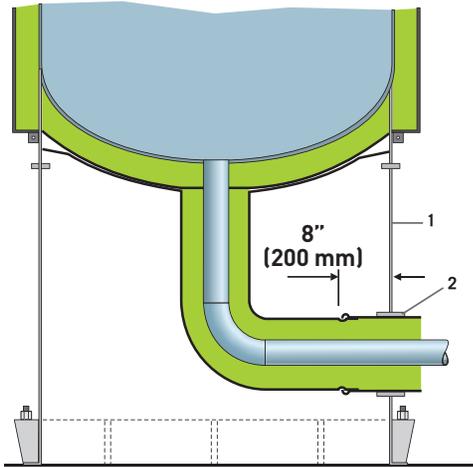


1. Supporting construction - 2. Mounting support

1.4 Insulation of columns

Selection and installation of the insulation

Insulation of a column base

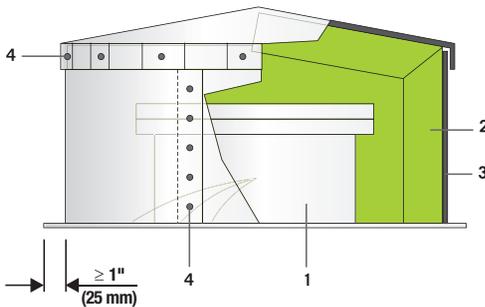


1. Skirt: Column support frame - 2. Sliding cover

Fire protection in column skirts

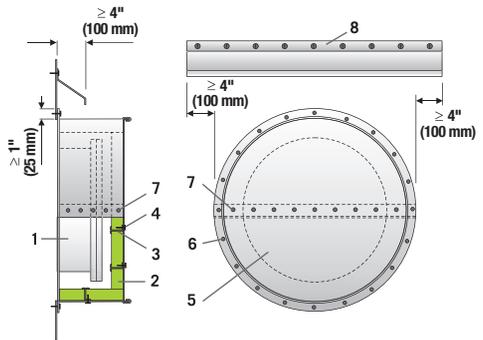
The fire protection quality of a column primarily depends on the fire resistance of the column support frame. When used in a system, ROCKWOOL can aid in fire protection solutions for column support skirts. If you have any questions, please consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

Insulation of manhole on the column head, vertical connection



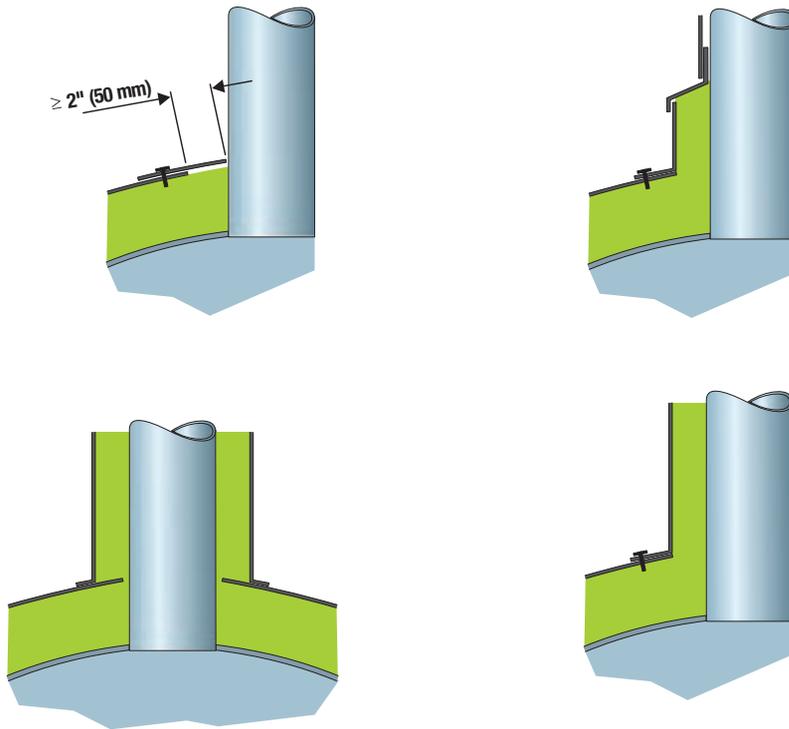
1. Manhole - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Sheet-metal screw

Insulation of manhole, horizontal connection



1. Manhole - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Stiffener - 4. Stiffener screw or rivet - 5. End cap - 6. Mounting rim - 7. Sheet-metal screw or rivet - 8. Rain deflector

Various methods for pipe penetrations



Support constructions and spacers

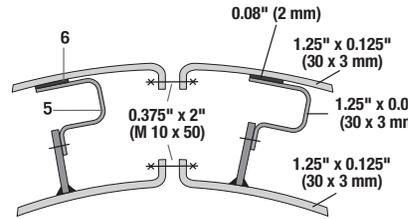
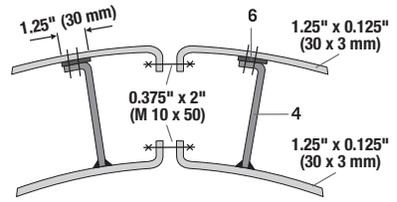
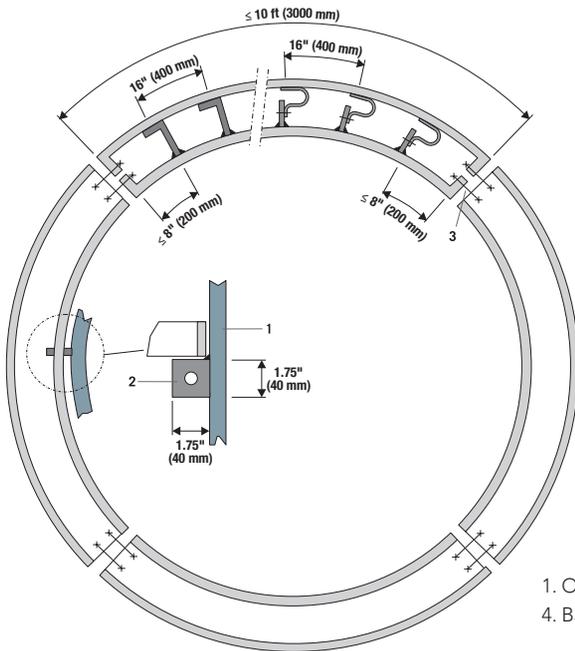
The application of support constructions and spacers on columns is essential. The objective of support constructions is to bear the weight of the insulation system and to bear the weight above mounting supports on the object to be insulated. The spacers keep the cladding of the insulation at a predetermined distance. On columns, which are always vertical, the substructures often assume the functions of the support construction and spacer.

AGI guidelines Q153 and Q154 can be referenced for the design of support constructions and spacers.

Before commencing the insulation works, fit mounting supports to the column to which the support constructions are fitted. The shape, construction and measurements of mounting supports for support constructions must enable the insulation to be fitted during assembly. Use the design loads specified in DIN guidelines 1055-4 and 1055-5 can be referenced to specify design loads and to dimension the mounting supports and the support constructions and spacers.

1.4 Insulation of columns

Support constructions and spacers



- 1. Object wall - 2. Mounting support - 3. Bolting -
- 4. Bar - 5. Omega clamp - 6. Thermal separating layer

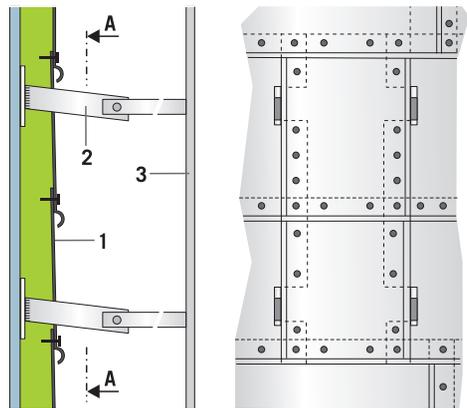
Cladding

The cladding of columns protects the insulation against mechanical influences and the weather. There is a wide range of different flat and profiled sheets available. See Chapter 3.2.2 'Cladding materials' for an overview. Further details are also provided in Chapter 1.3 "Insulation of vessels".

ProRox® GRP 1000 – for durable protection

The ProRox® GRP 1000 cladding system performs well in moist and corrosive environments. See Chapters 1.2 and 1.3 for more details.

Ladder support cleats



- side view
- front view
- 1. Cladding - 2. Ladder support cleat - 3. Ladder

1. System solutions

1.5 Insulation of storage tanks

The availability of raw materials, fuels and the storage of end products is critical in almost all fields of industry. Generally, large tanks are used for raw materials, fuels and end products. Small tanks or vessels (see chapter 1.3) are used to temporarily store semi-finished products. To conserve the substance and ensure the stability and safety of the production process, it is important to keep the temperature inside the tank between certain temperature limits.

Therefore the industries set high standards for the conditioning temperature of storage tanks. We give some examples:

- In the food industry, a milk cooling tank is a large storage tank used to cool and hold milk at a cold temperature until it can be packed and transported to the end-users.
- Storage facilities for liquefied gasses such as LNG, operate at very low temperatures down to -260 °F (-168 °C). Avoid evaporation or expansion of the liquefied gas, as this can result into safety problems.
- In the petrochemical industry, many storage facilities operate at high temperatures of 90 °F to 430 °F (30 °C to 220 °C) to avoid fluids, such as bitumen, from spoiling or setting. This could result in problems with pumping or discharging from the tank.

Conclusion: Insulation of storage tanks is a major factor in the functionality of storage facilities. It also serves the following purposes:

- **Cost savings:** Insulation significantly reduces the heat and the so-called breathing losses of the substance. The pay-back time for the hot insulation is, even at lower temperatures [90 °F (30 °C)], usually less than 1 year, whereas the lifetime of the insulation may be many years.
- **Environment:** In addition to the cost savings achieved, reduced heat losses will also lead to lower CO₂ emission. Reduced breathing losses of hazardous substances prevents damage to our environment.

- **Process control:** Insulation will prevent tanks from freezing or being heated by solar radiation. It will also reduce the cooling of the stored substance, preventing it from setting and remaining in a solid form. In both cases additional heating or cooling may be applicable.
- **Safety:** Fire resistant insulation reduces the risk of a fire outside the tank igniting a flammable medium. It is also protection against contact by minimizing the surface (contact) temperature of the tank.



Properly designed insulation work mainly depends on the isometrics and location of the storage tank, type of fluid and the purpose of the insulation. Even though the following examples of use are restricted to **hot thermal** insulation for outdoor application, the types of storage tanks used are so varied that the examples cannot fully take into account the particular circumstances of each case. Determine whether the products and construction described are suitable for the corresponding application in each individual case. If in doubt, consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

1.5 Insulation of storage tanks

The applicable standards and regulations must also be observed. A few examples follow:

- ASTM C1696 "Standard Guide for Industrial Insulation Systems"
- NACE SP0198 (Control of corrosion under thermal insulation and fireproofing materials - a system approach)
- MICA "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards"
- DIN 4140 (Insulation works on industrial plants and building services installations)
- AGI Q05 (Construction of industrial plants)
- AGI Q101 (Insulation works on power plant components)
- CINI-Manual: "Insulation in industry"
- BS 5970 (Code of practice for the thermal insulation of pipework, ductwork, associated equipment and other industrial installations)
- PIP (Process Industry Practices)

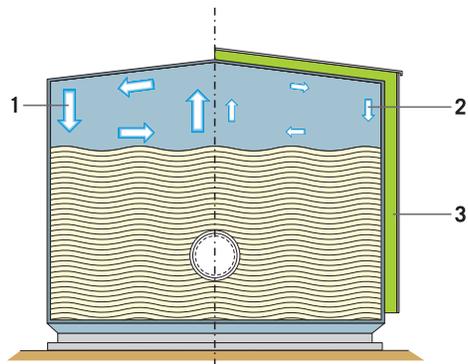
Insulation selection

Storage tanks are located outdoors, so it is important to select a material with a low thermal conductivity and excellent water repellent properties. ProRox® semi rigid boards (slabs) can be used to insulate tank walls. Applying a less water repellent, non pressure-resistant insulation like wired mats are not generally recommended. If foot traffic can occur, a pressure-resistant board (slab) such as ProRox® SL 590^{NA} is applied for the insulation of the tank top. If applying a product which is resistant to foot traffic is impossible, apply a support structure, where needed, to protect the insulation boards (slabs). For temperatures above 210 °F (100 °C) applying the insulation in at least 2 layers (e.g. masonry bond pattern) is recommended.

Insulation of tank tops

Insulating a tank is not easy. Corrosion of the tank top can occur if the insulation is not properly installed and maintained. Therefore, some companies tend not to insulate the tank top.

A common assumption is that the still air above the hot fluid acts as insulation of the tank top. This assumption is, however, not entirely correct. Due



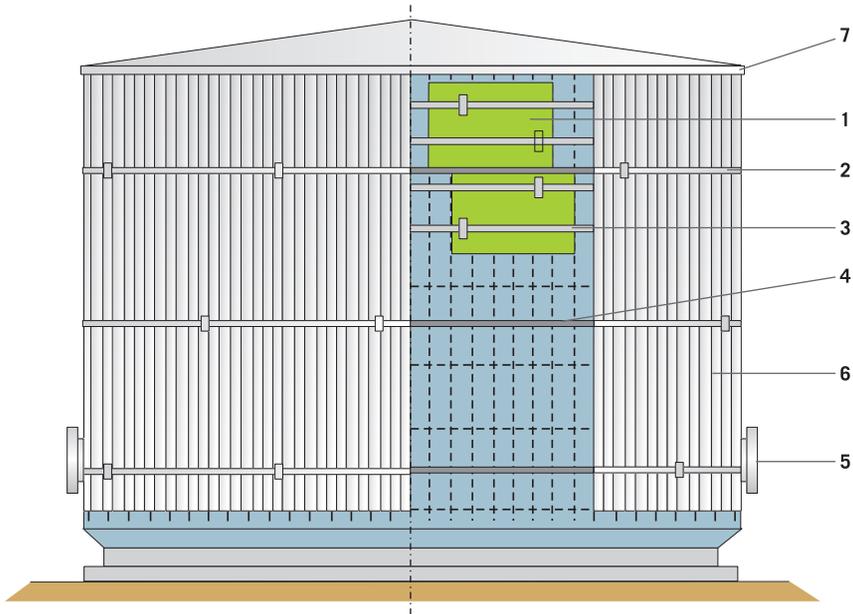
1. No insulation: strong convection - 2. Insulation: reduced convection - 3. ProRox® insulation

to the difference in temperature between the hot fluid and the non-insulated tank top there is fairly strong convection, resulting in considerable heat loss. Tank top insulation is feasible if the proper insulation material and mounting and fixing methods are applied.

Construction

Before starting the insulation works, ensure that all preparatory work on the object has been completed. Refer to Chapter 1.1 for details. Outdoor storage tanks are continuously exposed to the environment. Wind causes both pressure and delamination, which can easily result in damage to the insulation protection – usually aluminum sheeting. Consequently, the aluminum sheeting is blown away and rain water can leak into the insulation. Water accumulation can cause corrosion resulting in severe corrosion of the tank, leakage of the substance inside etc. Correct precautions are necessary to ensure the quality and life-time of the insulation.

Many systems can cope with the demands. The appropriate system will greatly depend on the diameter, temperature tank, the surrounding environment and the possibilities to use scaffolding/rope access when mounting the insulation. In addition, the plant owner may have specific requirements. Determine whether the products and construction described are suitable for the corresponding application in each individual case. If in doubt, consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.



1. ProRox® insulation - 2. Stainless steel bands (weather proofing) - 3. Stainless steel bands - 4. Support ring - 5. Protrusion - 6. Cladding - 7. Roof/wall connection



Cladding

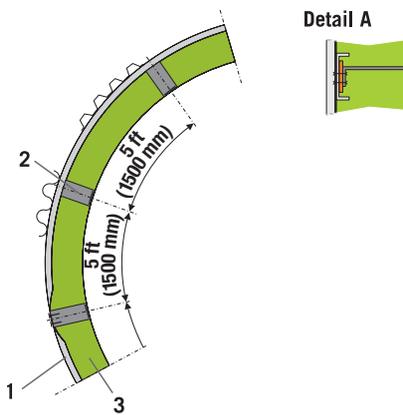
A metal cladding is generally applied for the tank wall and top. Thanks to its light weight, low costs and ease of installation, aluminum is commonly applied as cladding. In special circumstances (fire rating, corrosive environment etc) other materials such as stainless steel or ProRox® GRP 1000 may be used. Please note the comments in Chapter 1.2.5 and watertight covering in this section.

* Watertight as defined by product data sheet values.

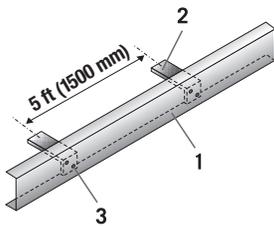
1.5 Insulation of storage tanks

Support rings

With vertical applications, the weight of the insulation can damage the insulation layer below. To avoid damaging the insulation, fit horizontal support rings if higher than 14 ft (4 m). The distance between the support rings should not exceed 10 ft (3 m). The construction should be built so that leakage water can be expelled from the insulation.



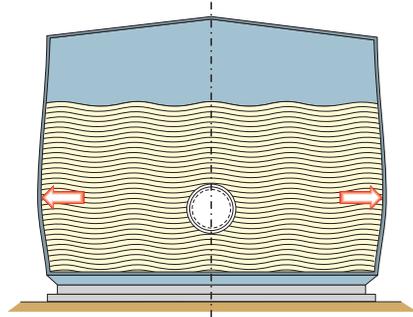
1. Tank wall - 2. Spacer - 3. ProRox® insulation



1. Horizontal support ring - 2. Spacer - 3. Fixing

Expansion

Large storage tanks expand due to changes in temperature and if the substance stored is filled or discharged (sometimes referred to as "bulging"). These factors can increase/decrease



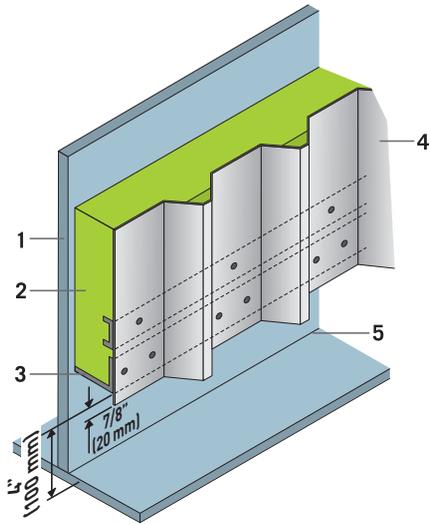
the tank diameter. Example: The diameter of a storage tank - \varnothing 65 ft (20 m), Avg T 430 °F (220 °C) - will increase approx. 2 1/2" (60 mm). This consequently increases the tank circumference by approx. 7" (180 mm). To avoid stress/tension on the insulation protection (aluminum sheeting) selecting flexible ProRox® insulation board (slab) or wrap (mat) is important. For high temperatures, anticipate further expansion by fitting profiled sheeting.

Ladders and manholes

The necessary space requirements for the insulation must be taken into account when designing and planning the installation. The distance between the ladder and the tanks should be large enough to make installing insulation afterwards possible. Insulate manholes so they can still be used frequently without damaging the insulation.

Tank wall and tank base connection

When a tank is filled, stress may occur at the welded seam between the wall and base of the tank. For inspection purposes the first 1 1/2 ft (50 cm) of the tank wall should not be insulated. The first support ring is usually welded above this level and constructed so that leakage water can be expelled from the insulation.

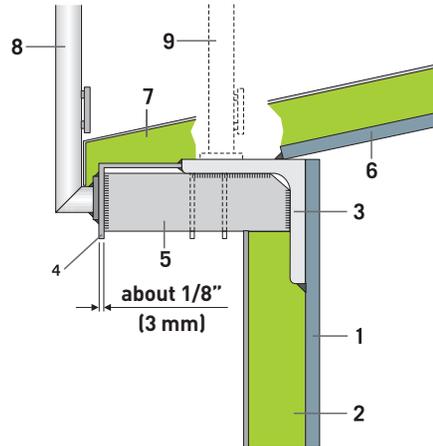


1. Tank wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Support ring - 4. Cladding - 5. Welded seam

Tank wall and tank top connection

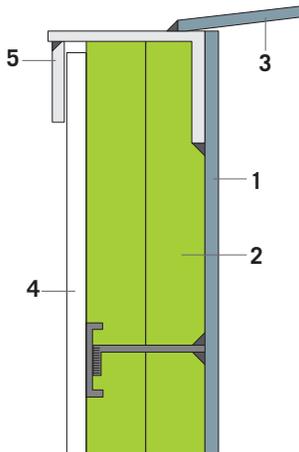
A rainwater shield is fitted at the seam between the tank wall and tank top to prevent leakage into the tank wall insulation. Weld the safety guard / railing on this rainwater shield.

Connection tank wall - tank roof with railing



1. Tank wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. L-profile - 4. Rain deflector - 5. Support strip - 6. Tank top - 7. Insulation: ProRox® pressure resistant insulation - 8. Railing - 9. Not insulated roof

Connection tank wall - tank top

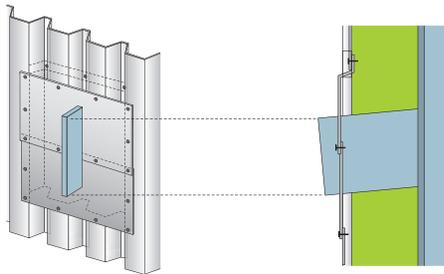
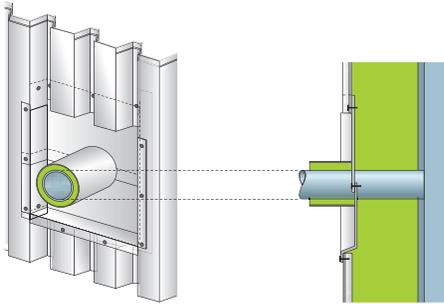


1. Tank wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Tank roof - 4. Cladding (aluminum) - 5. Deflector

1.5 Insulation of storage tanks

Protrusions within tank walls

Protrusions within the tank wall insulation may lead to leakage of rainwater or pollution with chemical substances. Keep the number of protrusions to a minimum. Insulate any remaining protrusions as indicated below.

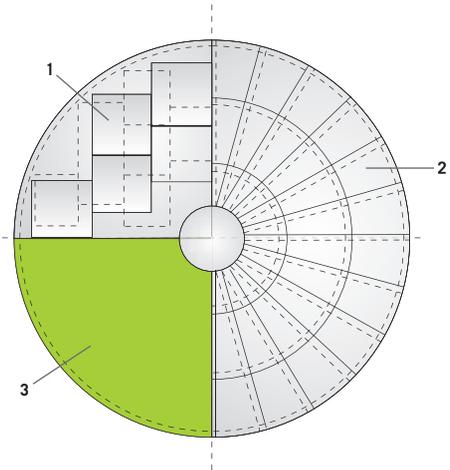


Finishing of tank tops

Similar to tank wall insulation, many constructions are possible for tank top insulation. The appropriate system greatly depends on the tank diameter and the nature of the seam with the tank wall. In addition, the plant owner may have specific requirements. The insulation is generally clad with aluminum sheeting, "rivetted" or in radial segments. As tank tops may be vulnerable to delamination, screws may be damaged (pulled loose).

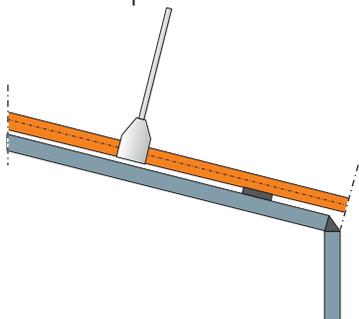
If welding the top is not possible, the steel radial segments in the centre of the top can be hooked together in a ring around the perimeter of the roof. Turnbuckles are used to keep the radials correctly tensioned.

In many cases, the most critical aspect of tank insulation is preventing the leakage of rainwater inside the insulation. Water accumulation can cause corrosion resulting in severe corrosion of the tank. Correct precautions are necessary to ensure the quality and life-time of the insulation.

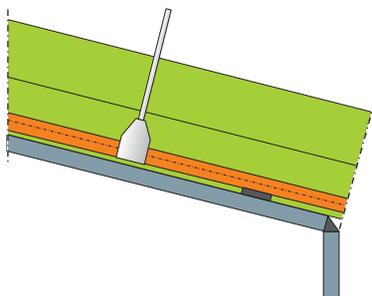


1. Finishing with aluminum cladding - 2. Finishing with steel radial segments - 3. ProRox® insulation

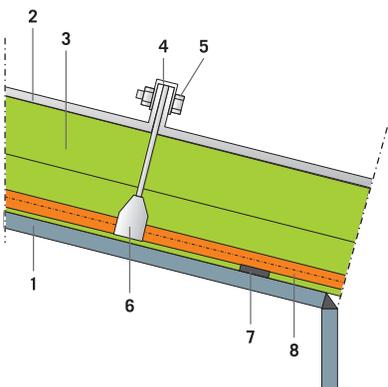
A: welded steel bar attached on the roof with a stainless steel strip



B: applying ProRox® insulation



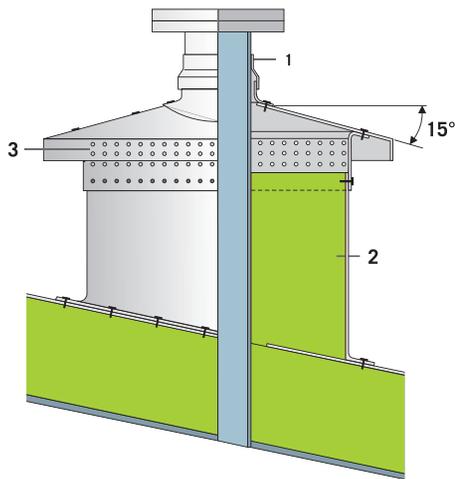
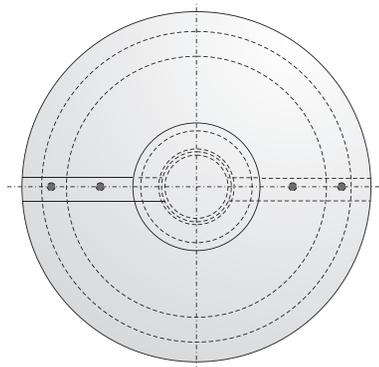
C: Finishing with aluminum cladding



1. Tank roof - 2. Cladding - 3. ProRox® pressure resistant insulation - 4. Aluminum finishing strip - 5. Bolts and rivets (stainless steel) - 6. Strip (stainless steel) - 7. Weld - 8. Welded steel bar

Protrusions within tank tops

Protrusions within the tank top insulation may lead to leakage of rainwater or pollution with chemical substances due to overflowing of the tank. Keep the number of protrusions in the tank top to a minimum. If this is not possible, apply the construction stated below.



1. Sealing tape - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Perforated sheet (ventilation)

1.5 Insulation of storage tanks

Foot traffic

Tank tops are subject to foot traffic. To ensure the insulation system is resistant to foot traffic, apply a pressure-resistant board (slab) such as ProRox® SL 590^{NA}. If the radius of the tank top is too large to allow the use of a rigid board (slab), use a more flexible board (slab) in combination with a (local) metal support construction. The walkways need to be clearly marked.

Watertight covering

Conventional systems for tank top insulation are often sensitive to weather damage (water, wind, etc.) and the effect of chemicals. The costs of maintenance, and the consequently lower operational safety, are often higher than the (energy) cost-savings that are realized by the insulation. For this reason, many tank tops, especially in the lower temperature ranges, are not insulated.

- ProRox® GRP 1000 is applied directly on ROCKWOOL tank top insulation on site. As direct cladding supports are no longer needed, it fits seamlessly to all parts of the tank and has unequalled rigidity (hardness) and mechanical strength (e.g. can be walked upon).
- In situations exposed to high wind stresses, a special cable construction can be applied. This will hold the insulation in place under the most extreme weather conditions.
- Anti-slip coatings are available that can easily be applied to ProRox® GRP 1000.
- The absence of cladding supports virtually eliminates any risk of corrosion under the insulation.
- This ensures perfect protection to the insulation and storage tank, which guarantees the durability of the insulation.

For more information please contact our ROCKWOOL Technical ServicesTeam.



ProRox® GRP 1000 ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team – for durable protection

- ProRox® GRP 1000 is a fiberglass reinforced polyester (GRP) wrap positioned between two sheets of foil. The material contains resins, glass fibers and a special filling agent. It is soft and flexible when unprocessed. It can be cut or timed in any shape and easily mounted onto the insulation in this state. The polyester then hardens when exposed to ultraviolet (UV) light. Once hardened, ProRox® GRP 1000 is watertight and forms a mechanical protection for the insulation.

* Watertight as defined by product data sheet values.

1. System solutions

1.6 Insulation of boilers

Hot water boilers and boilers for the production of water vapor under high pressures are considered to be steam boilers. As a generic term, boiler is used to denote steam generators and hot water installations. Insulating boilers has the following purposes:

- Reduces heat loss and increases the efficiency of the boiler
- Aids protection against contact by minimizing the surface temperature
- Prevents heating of the compartment air in the boiler house, which guarantees an acceptable working

The design and functionality of the boilers on the market is so varied that the examples of use cannot fully take into account the particular circumstances of each case. Determine whether the products and construction described are suitable for the corresponding application in each individual case. In if doubt, consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

The applicable standards and regulations must also be observed. A few examples follow:

- ASTM C1696 "Standard Guide for Industrial Insulation Systems"
- NACE SP0198 (Control of corrosion under thermal insulation and fireproofing materials - a system approach)
- ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code"
- MICA "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards"
- DIN 4140 (Insulation works on industrial plants and building services installations)
- AGI Q101 (Insulation works on power plant components)
- CINI-Manual: "Insulation in industry"
- BS 5970 (Code of practice for thermal insulation of pipe work, equipment and other industrial installations)
- PIP (Process Industry Practices)



1.6.1 Insulation of fire tube boilers

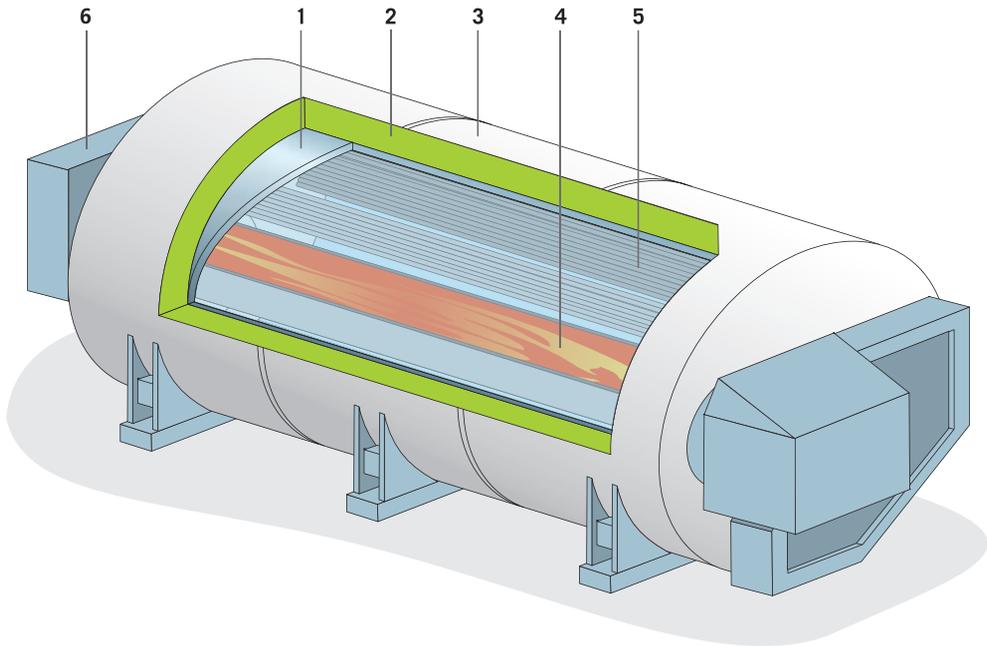
Fire tube boilers are often used in small and medium-sized industrial plants, where small and medium-sized mixtures of hot water or water vapor are required at low pressures. These boilers are used in the mechanical building appliances of large complexes, such as hotels, hospitals etc.

The fire tube boiler consists of a horizontally positioned cylindrical casing body with diameters of up to four meters. The interior generally contains a corrugated flame tube, where a fuel, usually oil or gas, is burnt. At the end of the boiler are so called reversing chambers, where the flue gas is reversed and pumped back through the boiler. Depending on the design, the boiler will have one or more gas flues, connected at the rear or the front base through the reversing chamber. The chamber surrounding the gas flues and the fire-tube is filled with the water to be heated.

1.6 Insulation of boilers

1.6.1 Insulation of fire tube boilers

Fire tube boiler

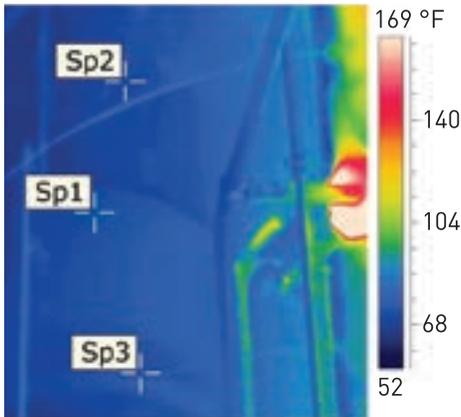


1. Boiler casing - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Cladding - 4. Flame tube - 5. Fire tube - 6. Reversing chamber

Load bearing ProRox® insulation is a proven solution in the insulation of flame tube-smoke tube boilers. Insulation is easily mounted onto the horizontal, cylindrical boiler surface and are easily fastened to the boilers with metal straps. Metal spacers, which always create thermal bridges, can be omitted. Due to the compression resistance of at least 210 PSF (10 kPa), the cladding can be mounted directly onto the Duraflex insulation. Alternatively, if the sheet cladding is fitted so closely that it can adopt this function, the fastening straps can be omitted. The insulation is characterized by a consistent rigidity and surface. Due to the lack of spacers, it guarantees an even surface temperature without temperature peaks (hot spots), which pose a hazard in the form of skin burns.

The balanced surface temperature profile also accounts for the thermography of a flame fire tube boiler shown above. Wired mats are generally used to insulate the area of reversing chambers and are secured with pins and spring clips.

The thermography of a flame tube-smoke tube boiler, which is insulated with ProRox® insulation. (Source LOOS INTERNATIONAL, Loos Deutschland GmbH) The areas insulated with ProRox® insulation show an even temperature distribution without visibly, increased hot spots. The right image shows the position of the thermographic camera. Reading point Sp1 has a temperature of 71 °F (21.7 °C); reading point Sp2 is 70 °F (21.2 °C) and reading point Sp3 is 73 °F (22.8 °C).



Insulation works on a fire tube boiler with ProRox® insulation



1.6.2 Supercritical steam generators

In the modern energy and heat economy, super critical steam generators, which burn fossil fuels such as mineral coal, brown coal, anthracite etc. are used to generate steam to operate steam turbines. In current utility steam boilers, up to 3,600 t steam is generated per hour under pressures of 4350 PSI (300 bar) and steam temperatures of 1150 °F (620 °C). The most common type is the Benson boiler, that is operated by forced circulation (with boiler feed pumps). In contrast to fire tube boilers, the water or vapor is not located in the vessel, but in pipes, which are fitted in gas-tight, welded tube-fin constructions and form the walls of the boiler. Generally constructed as single-pass or two-pass boilers, these boilers reach levels of up to 560 ft (160 m), depending on the fuel used. The bottom contains the furnace, where finely ground fuel is burned. The flue gases flow through the boiler and heat the water in the pipes, thereby causing it to evaporate. The boiler casing is suspended on a frame and can compensate for any thermal expansions that occur during operation (vertical and horizontal expansions). These types of expansions must be considered during the design of the insulation system. The following diagrams show the most important technical components in the insulation of a boiler.

Buckstays (Girders)

Buckstays (sometimes referred to as Girders, Stiffeners or Ribs) are fitted horizontally at regular intervals around the boiler. Buckstays are reinforcement elements, which prevent the boiler from bulging. A distinction is made between hot buckstays, which are located inside the insulation, and cold buckstays, which are located outside the insulation sections.

Dead spaces

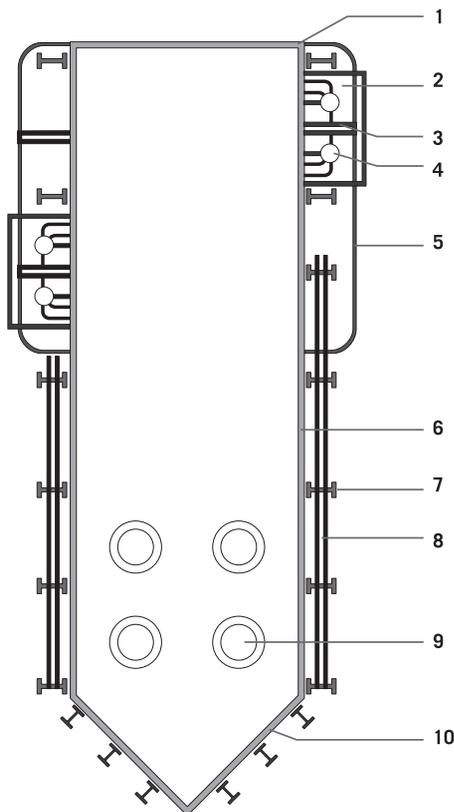
Dead spaces are located in front of the boiler wall or boiler roof, where installation components such as collectors, distributors or pipes are fitted. The dead spaces are located inside the insulation.

1.6 Insulation of boilers

1.6.2 Supercritical steam generators

Handles

Handles are reinforcement elements, which are fitted vertically between the buckstays (girders) and bear the vertical loads exerted on the buckstays on the boiler wall. Handles can be located inside and outside the insulation sections.



1. Boiler roof - 2. Dead space - 3. Cross bar - 4. Collector - 5. Boiler support tube - 6. Boiler wall - 7. Buckstay - 8. Handles - 9. Burner port - 10. Boiler funnel

Installation of the insulation system for utility steam generators

The following product characteristics are important when selecting a suitable insulation system for utility steam generators:

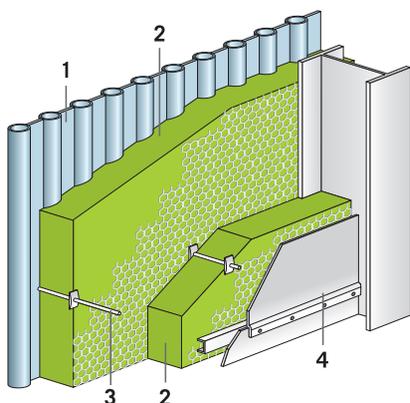
- The insulations used must be non combustible.
- The maximum service temperature of the insulation must be higher than the operating temperature of the installation component to be insulated.
- The thermal conductivity must be specified as a function of the temperature.
- The (longitudinal) air flow resistance must be as high as possible. High flow resistances reduce convection in the insulation.

In addition to protection against contact and the maximum permissible surface temperatures of 140 °F (60 °C), industrial parameters such as efficiency factors must be considered during the design of the insulation thickness. The AGI guideline Q101, "Insulation works on power plant components" recommends that the insulation layer thicknesses for power plant components is designed for a maximum heat flow rate density of 47.5 BTU/hr.ft² (150 W/m²). In view of rising energy prices and CO₂-emission reductions, this generally recommended value is, however, subject to critical analysis. From an economic and environmental perspective, a design parameter of well below 47.5 BTU/hr.ft² (150 W/m²) is often sensible. ProRox[®] insulation have proven invaluable in the insulation of utility steam generators over the years. They are flexible and can be easily mounted onto the various geometries or surface structures. ProRox[®] insulation products are non combustible, have high maximum service temperatures and exhibit a low degree of thermal conductivity across the entire temperature range.

The insulation is assembled in multiple layers, comprising two to three layers of insulation. ProRox[®] insulation with a maximum service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C) are a tried and tested solution as a first insulating layer in upper temperature ranges, as are often encountered in

dead spaces. Outer layers can be constructed with different types of ProRox® insulation to optimize the overall performance, depending on the temperature of the adjacent layer. AGI guideline Q101 suggests, galvanized wire netting and galvanized stitching wire in wired mats can only be heated up to a temperature of 750 °F (400 °C). With temperatures above 750 °F (400 °C), austenitic stainless steel wire netting and stitching wire must be used. To reduce the convection in the insulation of vertical constructions such as boilers, only use insulations that exhibit an air flow resistance of $\geq 50 \text{ kPa s/m}^2$.

Diagram of a boiler insulation system with wired mats



1. Tubed wall - 2. Insulation: ProRox® Wired Mats -
3. Fastening pins with spring plates - 4. Cladding

Before starting the insulation works, ensure that all preparatory work on the object has been completed. Refer to Chapter 1.1 for details.

ProRox® insulation is minimum 5 pins per board (or 6 pins per m^2), and a minimum of 8 pins per board (or 10 pins per m^2) on the underneath. The pins are either welded directly onto the surface of the object or are screwed into nuts. With finned walls (tube-fin walls), the pins cannot be fixed to

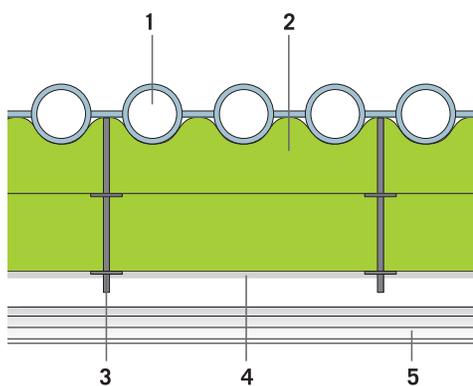
the pipes, but must be welded onto the bars between the pipes. Observe the following when pinning the insulation:

- With insulation thicknesses $\leq 5"$ (120 mm), use 8GA (6AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 0.162" (4 mm).
- With insulation thicknesses ranging from 5 1/2" to 10" (130 to 240 mm), use 6GA (4AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 0.2043" (5 mm).
- With insulation thicknesses $\geq 10"$ (240 mm) use 4GA (3AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 1/4" (6 mm).
- If the cladding rests directly on the insulation without a gap between the two, the pins must be 3/8" (10 mm) shorter than the insulation thickness.
- Fasten each insulation layer with clips.

With wired mats, all the lengthwise and crosswise joints must be sewn or wired together, or joined with six mat hooks per meter. If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered.

The following illustrations show a number of typical methods of insulating vessels.

Diagram of a boiler insulation system with a gap between the insulation and sheet cladding

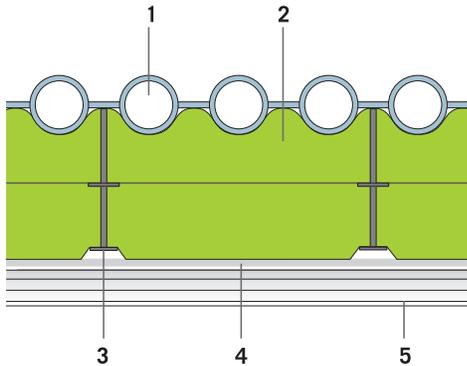


1. Finned pipe - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Fastening pins with spring plates - 4. Aluminum foil if necessary -
5. Metal cladding (e.g. profiled sheet)

1.6 Insulation of boilers

1.6.2 Supercritical steam generators

Diagram of a boiler insulation system with no gap between the insulation and sheet cladding



1. Tube wall - 2. ProRox® insulation – 3. spring plates - 4. Aluminum foil if required - 5. Cladding (e.g. profiled sheet)

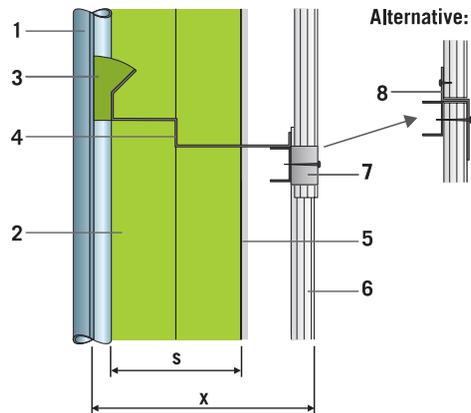
Convection in the insulation

With vertical insulation constructions in particular, where cavities can form on the heated side between the object and the insulation, there is an increased risk of heat loss – caused by convection in the insulation. This risk equally applies to finned walls, as an insulation that follows the contours of the object, in which the cavities in the area of the bars are sealed, cannot always be secured. Take the following measures to prevent convection:

- Construct vertical barriers at intervals of 16 to 26 feet (5 to 8 m).
- Only use insulations with a longitudinal flow resistance of $\geq 50 \text{ kPa s/m}^2$.
- Fitting an aluminum foil between the individual insulation layers and/or on the exterior is recommended.

Barriers

The following diagrams show two designs for vertical barriers. Depending on the temperature or structural requirements, the barrier can be manufactured from sheet metal ($\geq 0.02''$ (0.5 mm)) or aluminum foil ($\geq 0.003''$ (80 μm)). The barrier must be fastened to the object on the heated side and must reach to the cladding on the cold side. Fill interstices with loose stone wool (mineral wool). Where the insulation is constructed in multiple layers, cascade the barriers.

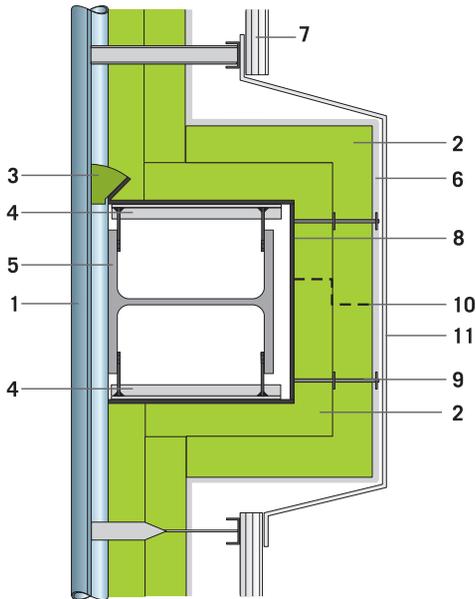


1. Boiler wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Fill with loose rock wool - 4. Convection barrier sheet - 5. Aluminum foil if required - 6. Metal cladding - 7. MF profile filling - 8. Z-profile separating sheet

Insulation of the buckstays

Buckstays (girders) that are exposed to heat are insulated and fitted with a casing. An example follows.

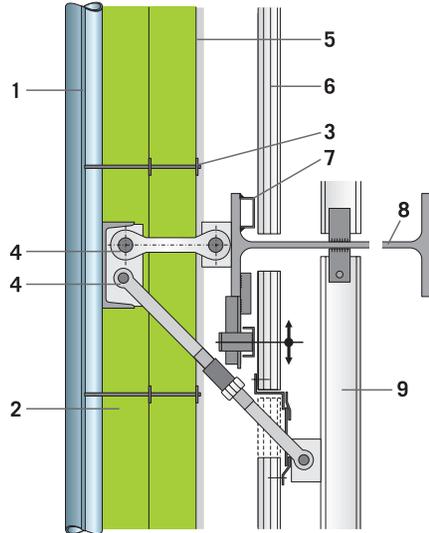
Buckstays exposed to heat on a boiler wall



1. Boiler wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Fill up with loose fill stone wool (mineral wool) - 4. Support construction - 5. Buckstay exposed to heat - 6. Aluminum foil if required - 7. Cladding/Preformed sheet - 8. Internal buckstay cover, made from black sheet - 9. Mat pins with clips - 10. Aluminum foil barrier - 11. Flat sheet cladding

Buckstays that are exposed to cold are generally not insulated and not cladded. An example follows.

Buckstays exposed to cold on a boiler wall



1. Boiler wall - ProRox® insulation - 3. Mat pins with clips - 4. Buckstay deflectors - 5. Aluminum foil if required - 6. Metal cladding/profiled sheet - 7. Substructure - 8. Cold buckstay - 9. Boiler handle

1.6 Insulation of boilers

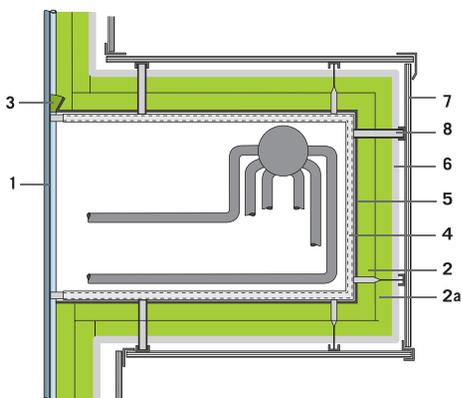
1.6.2 Supercritical steam generators

Insulation of dead spaces

Dead spaces located in front of the boiler wall or roof containing installation components, are enclosed with cladding, to which the insulation is then mounted. Use a non-scaling sheet with a minimum thickness of one mm. Fasten the sheets to appropriate, structurally measured substructures so that the thermal expansions can be accommodated. The insulation is secured to the dead space sheeting with pins as described above.

An example of dead space insulation follows.

Dead space for boiler wall collector



1. Boiler wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Fill up with loose fill stone wool (mineral wool) - 4. Support construction - 5. Dead space sheeting - 6. Aluminum foil if required - 7. Metal cladding/Preformed sheets - 8. Support construction and spacer

Support construction and spacer

There are various options available to attach support constructions and spacers to boilers. They can be mounted directly onto the boiler, to auxiliary constructions, to buckstays (girders), cross bars or handles. When selecting the support construction and spacer and the corresponding attachment option, a design matching must take place between the insulator and the plant manufacturer. With power plant components with temperatures above 660 °F (350 °C), use high temperature or fireproof steel.

Cladding

With power plant components with large surface areas, such as utility steam generators, profiled sheets are used as cladding material for structural, economic and design reasons. The open spans, overlaps and connections correspond to the profile. Refer to the instructions of the relevant profiled sheet manufacturer.

When selecting a suitable cladding material, consider the following parameters: corrosion, temperature resistance, type of construction and architectural design. The contractor and customer should consult about this matter.

Galvanized steel sheeting is generally used for the insulation of utility steam generators, which are usually located inside buildings.

1. System solutions

1.7 Insulation of flue gas ducts

Burning fossil fuels produces flue gases, which are guided through flue gas ducts through the various cleaning stages, such as denitrification (DENOX) desulfurization (DESOX) and dust removal (EN), discharged into the atmosphere. Large sections of flue gas ducts are often located outdoors. They are subject to an extent to both internal and external extreme conditions.

The effects of external atmospheric influences, such as wind and rain, as well as varying ambient temperatures on the flue gas duct, can lead to intense cooling of the flue gazes internally, and therefore to the accumulation of sulphuric acids, which facilitate corrosion.

Insulation systems on flue gas ducts have the following purposes:

- Reduce heat losses in the flue gas, thereby preventing sub-dew point (acid or water dew point) conditions in the flue gas on the interior surfaces of the flue gas duct. This also minimizes the corrosion risk. This also applies to areas with structural thermal bridges, such as support constructions, reinforcements etc.
- Reduce the heat losses in flue gas channels of heat recovery systems
- Personal protection
- Adherence to technical specifications with regard to noise

Designs are so varied in terms of their size and geometry, as well as the materials and layers used, that the examples of use below cannot fully take into account the particular circumstances of the construction-related factors.

Determine whether the products and construction described are suitable for the corresponding application in each individual case. If in doubt, consult the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

Furthermore, the applicable standards and regulations must be observed.

A few examples follow:

- ASTM C1696 "Standard Guide for Industrial Insulation Systems"
- ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code"
- MICA "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards"
- DIN 4140 (Insulation works on industrial plants and building services installations)
- AGI Q101 (Insulation works on power plant components)
- CINI manual: Industrial insulation
- BS 5970 (Code of practice for thermal insulation of pipe work, equipment and other industrial installations)
- PIP (Process Industry Practices)

1.7.1 Installation of the insulation systems for flue gas ducts

ProRox[®] insulation have been a proven solution for rectangular flue gas ducts for many years. They are flexible and can fit onto different geometries and surface structures. ProRox[®] insulation products are non-flammable, have high maximum service temperatures and exhibit a low thermal conductivity across the total temperature range.

Secure the insulation to the **rectangular ducts** with welding pins and spring clips. Before the welding pins are fitted, a bonding procedure should be determined by the plant manufacturer and insulator, which does not damage any corrosion coating present on the inside and outside of the flue gas duct. For example, it may be advisable to fit the welding pins before installing the corrosion coating.

ProRox[®] insulation should be secured to flat surfaces with at least minimum 5 pins per board (or 6 pins per m²), and a minimum of 8 pins per board (or 10 pins per m²) on the underneath.

1.7 Insulation of flue gas ducts

1.7.1 Installation of the insulation systems for flue gas ducts

Observe the following when pinning the insulation:

- With insulation thicknesses ≤ 5 " (120 mm), use 8GA (6AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 0.162" (4 mm).
- With insulation thicknesses ranging from 5 1/2" to 10" (130 to 240 mm), use 6GA (4AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 0.2043" (5 mm).
- With insulation thicknesses ≥ 10 " (240 mm) use 4GA (3AWG) pins with a minimum diameter of 1/4" (6 mm).
- If the cladding rests directly on the insulation without a gap between the two, the pins must be 3/8" (10 mm) shorter than the insulation thickness.
- Fasten each insulation layer with clips.

With wired mats, all the lengthwise and crosswise joints must be sewn or wired together, or joined with six mat hooks per meter. If the insulation is assembled in multiple layers, the joints of the individual insulation layers must be staggered.

To reduce convection in the insulation, fitting barriers is recommended, for example made from steel, at intervals of 16 to 26 feet (5 to 8 m) when working on large vertical surfaces. The barrier must be effective across the entire section of insulation up to the cladding.

ProRox® insulation is recommended insulation for **round flue gas ducts**, where temperatures are below 570 °F (300 °C). These are mounted directly onto the flue gas duct and are fastened with straps. A fastening with welding pins and spring clips is generally not required in this instance.

Insulation of reinforcement elements

Large flue gas ducts are fitted with reinforcement profiles to stabilize the duct. These can consist of double T-girders, hollow sections or reinforcing ribs and form potential thermal bridges. This may cause the following problems:

- The thermal bridges cause an increased heat flow and lead to a temperature decrease on the

inside wall of the ducts.

- Temperature variations between the inner and exterior lead to stress in the profiles. If the tensile forces become too great, this can lead to deformations and breaking of the welding.

Preventing temperature drops on the inside wall

To prevent a drop in temperature on the inside wall in the area of reinforcement profiles, they must always be insulated. The insulation thickness required depends on factors such as the size and geometry of the profiles, the temperature level and rate of flow within the flue gas duct and the operating method. Complex calculations may be required to determine the insulation thickness. These are usually established by the plant manufacturer, who is aware of the installation parameters. When starting up the installation, a brief drop in temperature below the dew point of the flue gas is unavoidable on the inside wall of the duct.

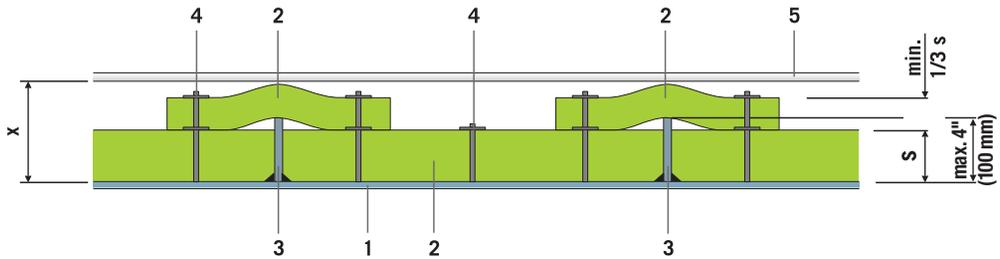
Reduction of stress due to temperature in the reinforcement profiles

The operating method of the installation influences the problem of stress in the reinforcement profiles caused by temperature.

Less critical is the **steady operation**, where the flue gas temperature does not change with the passage of time. Generally, stresses due to temperature are not critical if the implementation principles outlined in the AGI guideline Q101 are observed:

- The insulation thickness across the reinforcement elements should be of the same thickness as the insulation on the flue gas duct.
- In the case of ducts with reinforcing ribs up to a height of 4" (100 mm), the thickness of the insulation layer across the ribs must measure at least one third of the insulation thickness required for the duct.

Insulation of reinforcing ribs



1. Duct wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Reinforcing ribs - 4. Welding pins with clips - 5. Metal cladding

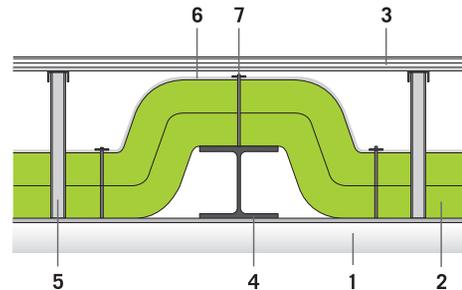
In the case of **non-steady operation**, for example, when starting up the installation causes fluctuating flue gas temperatures, measures must be taken if necessary to allow even heating of the reinforcement profiles. The temperatures on the duct wall, as well as on the inside of the reinforcement element, increase rapidly when the installation is started up, whilst the outside of the profile remains cold at first and only heats up after a longer delay. This leads to temperature differences, which can cause undue stressing of the component. The extent of the temperature differences depends on numerous parameters. A few examples follow:

- The operating speed influences the speed at which temperature of the flue gas increases and the temperature difference in the reinforcement element.
- High temperature differences occur in the case of large profiles.
- The shape of the reinforcement profiles influences an even temperature distribution. Thick walled profiles, for example, do not warm up as evenly as thin walls.
- The different thermal conductivities of the materials used and the heat transfer rates lead to an uneven temperature distribution.

To reduce the temperature differences, the insulation must be structurally designed to enable as much heat as possible to be transported by

means of radiation and convection from the duct wall to the external flange of the reinforcement profiles. The following shows the design details for a profile insulation system.

Insulation of reinforcing ribs



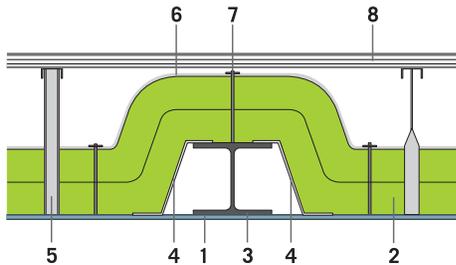
1. Duct wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Metal cladding: corrugated sheet - 4. Reinforcing element - 5. Supporting construction and spacer - 6. Aluminum foil (optional) - 7. Welding pins/clips

This type of design is generally recommended for profiles measuring up to $\leq 10''$ (240 mm) in height.

1.7 Insulation of flue gas ducts

1.7.1 Installation of the insulation systems for flue gas ducts

Insulation of reinforcing element with cavity and covering sheet



1. Duct wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Reinforcing element - 4. Covering sheet - 5. Support construction and spacer - 6. Aluminum foil (optional) - 7. Welding pins/clips - 8. Metal cladding: corrugated sheet

In the case of profiles measuring above 10" (240 mm) in height, a covering sheet should also be installed. The heat transfer from the duct wall to the external flange is therefore not impeded and the cavities do not need to be insulated.

The profile insulation described leads to increased heat losses through convection in the case of vertical steel girders. As a result, barriers – for example in the form of sheets welded into the reinforcement elements – must be fitted at intervals of approximately 10 to 16 feet (3 to 5 m) to reduce convection.

1.7.2 Cladding of flue gas ducts

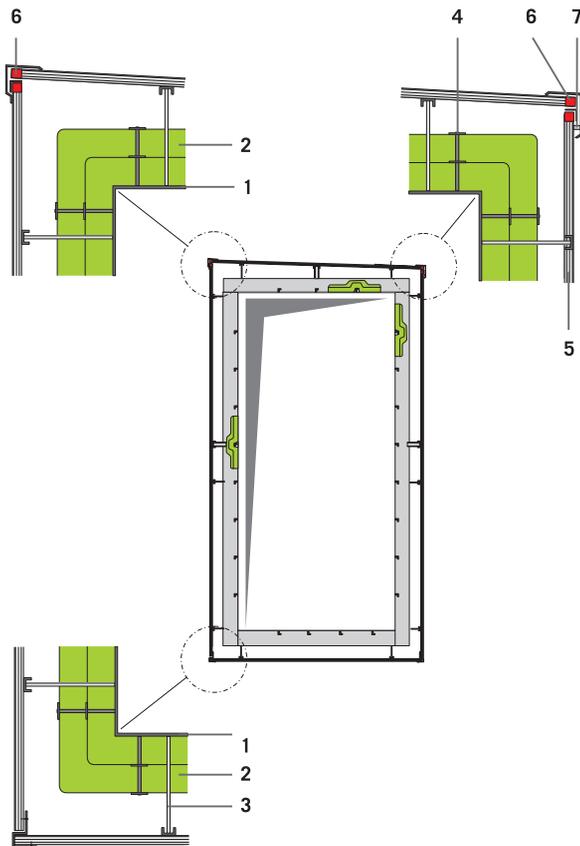
Due to their size and the associated high demands placed upon the flexural rigidity of cladding, flue gas ducts are encased with profiled sheets such as trapezoidal sheets. Flat sheets, which are generally cambered, can also be used. The claddings are secured to the flue gas duct using substructures.

With ducts located outdoors with flue gas temperatures of < 250 °F (120 °C), an air space of at least 9/16" (15 mm) should be left between the cladding and insulation. On clear nights, especially, there is a risk that thermal radiation in space (the small surface of the "flue gas duct" radiates on an endlessly large surface "space"), will cause the surface temperature of the cladding to fall below the dew point temperature of the ambient air. The atmospheric humidity from the ambient air can then condense on the inside of the cladding. Therefore, the insulation and cladding must not be allowed to touch. To drain the water, drill drainage or ventilation holes at the lowest point on the underside.

With round flue gas ducts constructed using ProRox® insulation without a spacer then corrugated straps or bubble wrap are inserted between the insulation and sheet cladding as a spacer.

If the duct is located outside, the upper surface of the cladding should have a gap of $\geq 3\%$. The following pages show two examples for the cladding of a flue gas duct with a pent or gabled roof.

Duct located outdoors with a cladding constructed as a pent (single sloping) roof

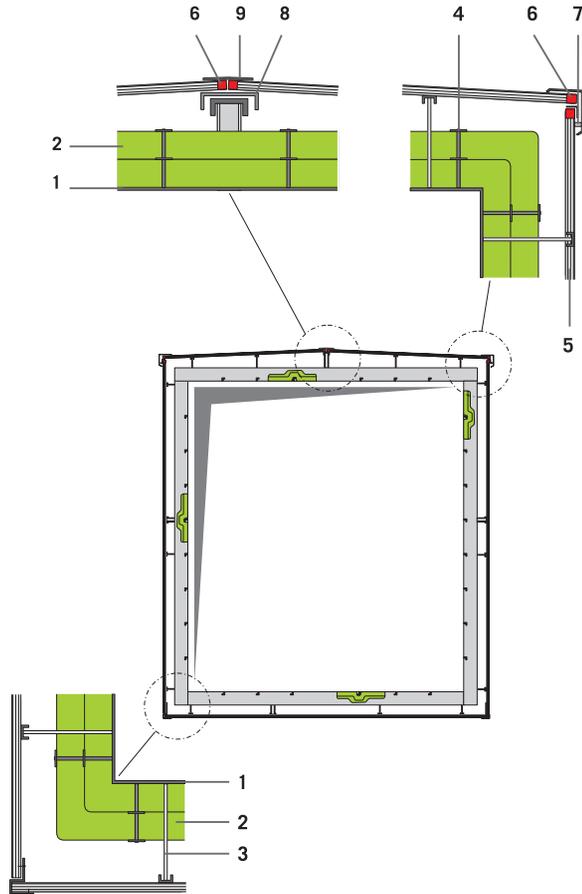


1. Duct wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Support construction and spacer - 4. Welding pins/clips - 5. Metal cladding; corrugated sheet - 6. Extension (trapezoid) - 7. Z-shaped spacer

1.7 Insulation of flue gas ducts

1.7.2 Cladding of flue gas ducts

Duct located outdoors with a cladding constructed as a saddle (double sloping) roof



1. Duct wall - 2. ProRox® insulation - 3. Support construction and spacer - 4. Welding pins/clips - 5. Metal cladding: corrugated sheet - 6. Extension (trapezoid) - 7. Z-shaped spacer - 8. Support construction - 9. Ridge

1.7.3 Acoustic insulation of flue gas ducts

The thermal insulation of flue gas ducts influences the propagation of airborne noise and structure-borne noise. The effects of this depend on many factors, such as the frequency, the noise pressure level and the structure. The following structural measures influence the acoustic properties of an insulation system:

- Changing the insulation layer thickness and/or the apparent density of the insulation
- Changing the clear distance between the flue gas duct and the cladding
- Acoustic decoupling of the cladding from the flue gas duct using elastic elements within the support construction and spacer (e.g. omega clamp, rubber elements, steel wool pads)
- Increasing the basic weight of the cladding through the choice of material or sheet thickness
- Internal coating of the cladding with sound-deadening materials
- Construction of the insulation in multiple layers, with at least two separate insulating layers and cladding

1. System solutions

1.8 Cold boxes

Many industrial applications use gases such as oxygen, nitrogen and argon. These gases are obtained using cryogenic gas separation technology, whereby air is condensed and converted into a liquid. Afterwards, the various elements can be separated using fractional distillation.

So-called air separation plants are characterized by an extremely low temperature of as low as approximately -328 °F (-200 °C). In addition to the risk of water and ice forming at this cryogenic temperature, there is also the risk of pure oxygen condensing against the cold parts of the system. The presence of oil and grease may be enough to cause the high concentration of oxygen to spontaneously combust.

This is obviously an extremely hazardous situation. The presence of oil and grease must therefore be avoided at all times. It is vitally important to well insulate all cold parts of the system, such as vessels and pipes. Strict specifications regarding the insulation are therefore essential. A standard, frequently applied in Europe, for the insulation of air separation plants is the AGI Q 118 standard "insulation work on air separation plants". This standard describes in detail the various parts of the installation and the insulation to be applied. The construction method naturally depends on the application. The following instructions are limited to the insulation of so-called cold boxes.

Cold boxes

An important component in gas separation plants are the so-called "cold boxes". Cold boxes are (pressure) vessels that hold a gas or liquid at a very low temperature. The distinctive feature of cold boxes is the double-wall construction, which allows the insulation to be fitted between the inner and outer walls. The cold box is sealed after the insulation has been fitted, so the insulation can no longer come into contact with, for example, water, snow, dust and contaminants.



Choice of insulation

The choice of insulation material depends on a variety of parameters, including the user requirement, standards (e.g. AGI Q118), the operating temperature and the accessibility of the installation. In many cases, mineral wool fibers are used (e.g. ProRox® GR 903), which contain a very low proportion of organic substances- the so-called "Linde Quality". This can be easily injected into the vessel and has a very long lifespan. The material is easily removed for inspection purposes.

Fitting the insulation

In compliance with the AGI Q118 standard, the fibers are fitted manually or using an injection technique. The hollow spaces in the installation must be free of water and other liquids and contaminants. All filling openings (and non-filling openings) must be sealed. An optimum result is achieved by pulling the packaged, loose fibers apart before injecting or shaking them into the vessel. The ProRox® GR 903 must be injected or shaken into the unit in even layers. If necessary, the wool can then be tamped to achieve the required density. To avoid damage to the installation, manually filling certain parts of the installation may be advisable. The ultimate density of the fitted wool depends on how it is fitted.

Densities of at least 9.4 lb/ft³ (150 kg /m³) are feasible. The official requirement according to the AGI Q118 standard is 10 to 12.5 lb/ft³ (160 to 200 kg/m³) . The procedure is outlined step by step as follows:

1. Create a trial set up by filling a 2 x 2 x 2 ft (60 x 60 x 60 cm) crate with an evenly distributed layer of loose wool, with a thickness of 12 to 16" (300 to 400 mm). Then have a man of average weight compact this layer by treading on it. Repeat this process until the box is full. Calculating the quantity of wool used (by mass) afterwards allows the feasible density to be determined. This also gives a good idea of the tamping method required in order to achieve an effective filling density.
2. Before starting to fill the cold box, fill the installation with air to create a slight over-pressure. This will make any possible leaks, which can occur during the tamping process, audible.
3. The cold box is filled with an evenly distributed layer of ProRox® GR 903 granulate, with a thickness of 12 to 16" (300 to 400 mm). Tamp down this layer until a density is reached that corresponds to the density in step 1.
4. Repeat step 3 until the cold box is completely filled. Check the filling density by regularly calculating the mass used in relation to the filled volume. The pressure required to achieve a certain density depends on the procedure that has been followed.

NOTE

As ProRox® GR 903 Granulate may settle after a while or the shape of the cold box may alter due to temperature fluctuations, take into account that the unit will need to be refilled.



2

Theory

ProRox

Industrial
Insulation

Theory

2. Theory

Table of contents

| | | |
|------------|--|------------|
| 2.1 | Norms & Standards | 88 |
| 2.1.1 | Overview of different norms & standards | 88 |
| 2.1.2 | Insulation specification | 89 |
| | a) API | 89 |
| | b) ASTM standards | |
| | c) PIP - guidelines | 90 |
| | d) Canadian Standards | 91 |
| | e) MICA Standards | 91 |
| | f) NACE International Standard Practice | 91 |
| | g) CINI Guideline | 91 |
| | h) European standardization (CEN) | 92 |
| | i) CE-mark | 93 |
| | j) DIN Standards & Guidelines | 94 |
| | k) AGI | 95 |
| | l) BFA WKSB | 96 |
| | m) FESI | 96 |
| | n) ISO | 97 |
| | o) VDI 2055 | 97 |
| | p) British standard | 98 |
| | q) NF (Norme Française) mark | 99 |
| | r) Unified Technical Document (Document Technique Unifié, DTU) | 102 |
| 2.1.3 | Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in North America | 103 |
| 2.1.4 | Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in Europe | 103 |
| 2.1.5 | Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry within the Benelux | 105 |
| 2.1.6 | Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in Germany | 105 |
| 2.2 | Product properties & test methods | 107 |
| 2.2.1 | Fire behavior | 107 |
| 2.2.2 | Thermal conductivity | 109 |
| 2.2.3 | Maximum service temperature | 112 |
| 2.2.4 | Water leachable chloride content | 115 |
| 2.2.5 | Water repellency | 116 |
| 2.2.6 | Water vapor transmission | 118 |
| 2.2.7 | Air flow resistance | 118 |
| 2.2.8 | Compression resistance | 118 |
| 2.2.9 | Density | 119 |
| 2.3 | Bases for thermal calculations | 120 |
| 2.3.1 | Heat Transfer – ASTM C168 and C680 (North American basis and terms) | 120 |
| 2.3.2 | Heat transfer (European basis and terms) | 123 |

2. Theory

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.1 Overview of different norms & standards

There are numerous standards, guidelines and specifications for the planning, design and construction of industrial/mechanical insulation systems. These regulations must be observed to guarantee the functionality, economic operation and safety of a technical installation, as well as a long service life.

Industrial plants are built and maintained according to a range of requirements, detailed in numerous technical standards that cover all design and equipment requirements.

An overview of the commonly used standards, guidelines and specifications is mentioned below.

Society standards

Published standards from an accredited standards developer. Common examples are ASTM, CAN/ULC, European Standard (EN), DIN. These standards often relate to product performance characteristics.

Industrial guidelines for insulation

In many cases, industrial guidelines are established to ease and to reduce the development & maintenance time and effort of specifications sharing best practices. They contain detailed technical requirements for design, material selection/approval. These specifications often refer to society standards and industrial guidelines. Typical examples in industrial insulation are ASTM C1696, DIN 4140, AGI Q101, PIP, CINI.

Internal plant owner or contractor specifications

Detailed technical requirements for design, procurement, construction, and related maintenance based on a company's experience (so called best practices), e.g.:

- Exxon standards : ES
- Mobil standards : MS
- British Petroleum : BP
- Shell : DEP

These specifications often refer to industrial guidelines and society standards.

General-specific or site standards

General project or maintenance standards for common materials and equipment adopted by owners and contractors. Often, national, country-specific standards & guidelines are observed, e.g.:

- Saudi Operation Specification: SOS
- Petroleum Development Oman: POD

2.1.2 Insulation specification

The insulation specification is part of the plant owner or contractors specification. It generally contains:

- Guidelines for preparation prior to the insulation work
- Material specifications
- Mounting instructions per application

The insulation specification also often includes the guidelines for corrosion protection. Similar to other specifications, the insulation specification often refers to society standards and/or industrial guidelines.

The detailed lay-out per specification will depend on the type of application, the plant owner, contractor and country specific requirements.

A more detailed explanation of the most common standards, guidelines and specifications is given in the following documents.

- a) API
- b) ASTM standards
- c) PIP guideline
- d) Canadian standards
- e) MICA standards
- f) NACE international standard practice
- g) CINI guideline
- h) European standardization
- i) CE-Mark
- j) DIN standards & guidelines
- k) AGI guidelines
- l) BFA WKSGB guidelines
- m) FESI guidelines
- n) ISO standards
- o) VDI 2055 guideline
- p) British Standard (BS)
- q) Norme Française (NF)
- r) Document Technique Unifié (DTU)

The wide variety per country, application and plant owner means these documents cannot convey the entire content and so cannot claim to be complete. For specific applications, please

contact our ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team for advice.

a) API Standards

API (American Petroleum Institute) is a trade association focused on the Oil & Gas industry. They have developed standards and practices that have an influence on design. Some of the common standards that relate to insulation are mentioned below:

- API 521 - Pressure-relieving and Depressuring Systems
- API 583 Corrosion Under Insulation and Fireproofing

More information is available via www.api.org

b) ASTM standards

ASTM International (ASTM), originally known as the American Society for Testing and Materials, is an international organization that develops and publishes voluntary standards for a wide range of materials, products, systems and services.

ASTM is older than other organizations for standardization, such as BSI (1901) and DIN (1917), however it differs from these in that it is not a national standard-setting body. This role is performed in the USA by the ANSI Institute. Nevertheless, ASTM plays a predominant role in the specification of standards in North America and for many international projects – particularly in the Middle East, Asia and South-America.

The ASTM standards are grouped into materials standards and validation standards for product properties. International tenders for the insulation of industrial plants often refer to relevant ASTM standards.

The ASTM annual book of standards comprises 77 volumes. The corresponding standards for insulation are incorporated into ASTM Volume 04.06 "Thermal insulation; Building and environmental acoustics".

More information is available via www.astm.org

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.2 Insulation specification

| | | |
|----------------------|------------|--|
| Materials | ASTCM C553 | Standard specification for mineral fiber blanket thermal insulation for commercial and industrial applications |
| | ASTM C592 | Standard specification for mineral fiber blanket insulation and blanket-type pipe insulation (metal-mesh covered) (industrial type) |
| | ASTM C547 | Standard specification for mineral fiber pipe insulation |
| | ASTM C612 | Standard specification for mineral fiber block and board thermal insulation |
| | ASTM C1393 | Standard specification for perpendicularly oriented mineral fiber roll and sheet thermal insulation for pipes and tanks |
| Product Properties | ASTM C335 | Standard test method for steady-state heat transfer properties of pipe insulation |
| | ASTM C177 | Standard test method for steady-state heat flux measurements and thermal transmission properties by means of the guarded-hot-plate apparatus |
| | ASTM C411 | Standard test method for hot-surface performance of high-temperature thermal insulation |
| | ASTM E84 | Standard test method for surface burning characteristics of building materials |
| | ASTM C795 | Thermal insulation for use in contact with austenitic stainless steel |
| | ASTM C692 | Evaluating the influence of thermal insulations on external stress corrosion cracking tendency of austenitic stainless steel |
| | ASTM C871 | Chemical analysis of thermal insulation materials for leachable chloride, fluoride, silicate and sodium ions |
| Thermal Calculations | ASTM C680 | Standard practice for estimate of the heat gain or loss and the surface temperatures of insulated flat, cylindrical, and spherical systems by use of computer programs |
| | ASTM C1129 | Standard practice for estimation of heat savings by adding thermal insulation to bare valves and flanges |
| Covering | ASTM C1423 | Standard guide for selecting jacketing materials for thermal insulation |
| | ASTM C921 | Standard practice for determining properties of jacketing materials for thermal insulation |
| Other | ASTM C585 | Standard practice for inner and outer diameters of thermal insulation for nominal sizes of pipe and tubing |
| | ASTM C929 | Standard practice for handling, transporting, shipping, storage, receiving, and application of thermal insulation materials for use in contact with austenitic stainless steel |
| | ASTM C1696 | Standard Guide for Industrial Thermal Insulation Systems |

c) PIP - guidelines

Process Industry Practices (PIP) is a consortium of mainly US-based process industry owners and engineering construction contractors who serve the industry. PIP was organized in 1993 and is a separately funded initiative of the Construction Industry Initiative (CII) and the University of Texas at Austin. PIP publishes documents called "Practices". These Practices reflect a harmonisation of company engineering standards in many engineering disciplines.

Specific Practices include design, selection and specification, and installation information. Some of the best practices are mentioned below.

- INIH1000 - Hot Insulation Installation Details
- INSH1000 - Hot Service Insulation Materials and Installation Specification

More information is available via www.pip.org

d) Canadian Standards

The SCC (Standards Council of Canada) mandate is to promote efficient and effective voluntary standardization in Canada, in particular, to promote, oversee and coordinate efforts of people and organizations involved in the National Standards System.

In Canada (as in the US) accredited bodies such as CSA (Canada Standards Association) and CAN/ULC (Underwriters Laboratory) produce consensus based standards that can be adopted by various regulatory bodies. ASTM standards are widely used in Canada (see Chapter 2.1.2 on ASTM standards).

Most commonly used standard in Industrial/Mechanical applications is CAN/ULC S114 (Non-combustibility) and S102 (Surface Burning Characteristics).

Provincial building codes based on the model National Building Code of Canada (NBCC) regulate the general construction of buildings, including industrial buildings housing process equipment.

More information is available via www.scc.ca

e) MICA Standards

First published in 1979 by MICA (Midwest Insulation Contractors Association), the Standards Manual has received wide acceptance throughout the United States and other countries. It has established standardized guides never before available to our field for methods of designing, specifying and installing thermal insulation products. The 7th edition of the National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards continues to be the national source of technical information for the design specification and installation of commercial and industrial insulation.

More information is available via www.micainsulation.org

f) NACE International Standard Practice

NACE International - The Corrosion Society serves nearly 33,000+ members in 116 countries and is recognized as the premier authority for corrosion control solutions. The organization offers technical training and certification programs, conferences, industry standards, reports, publications and more.

NACE standards represent a consensus of those individual members who have reviewed the documents, their scope, and their provisions.

NACE Standard Practice SP0198-2010 "Control of Corrosion Under Thermal Insulation and Fireproofing Materials - A System Approach" provides the current technology and industry practices for mitigating corrosion under thermal insulation and fireproofing materials, a problem termed **Corrosion Under Insulation (CUI)**.

More information is available via www.nace.org

g) CINI Guideline

CINI is a Dutch association, in which various companies active in the industrial/mechanical insulation of industrial plants have united to develop uniform material and design guidelines. When compiling these standards, CINI works closely with many decision makers from within the insulation sector.

The CINI Standards are guidelines, yet they do not constitute national standards. Nevertheless, the CINI standards are often adopted by operators and design engineers in the Benelux countries, as well as by international companies operating in the petrochemical industry, for example, Shell. They are often used by operators and design engineers as guidelines on tendering procedures for insulation works. The CINI standards also are grouped into material standards and design rules. The validation of the material properties is based on ASTM and AGI guidelines.

More information is available via www.cini.nl

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.2 Insulation specification

| | | |
|--|--------------|--|
| Insulation materials (Material standards) | CINI 2.2.01 | Stone wool boards (slabs): ProRox® boards (slabs) for the thermal insulation of equipment |
| | CINI 2.2.02 | Wired mats: ProRox® wire mesh blankets for the thermal insulation of large diameter pipes, flat walls and equipment |
| | CINI 2.2.03 | Pipe sections: ProRox® pipe sections and prefabricated elbows for the thermal insulation of pipes |
| | CINI 2.2.04 | Loose wool: Loose stone wool (mineral wool) without binder for the thermal insulation of valve boxes and the specification stuffing of insulation mattresses |
| | CINI 2.2.05 | Lamella mats: ProRox® lamella mats for the thermal insulation of air ducts, pipe bundles and equipment |
| | CINI 2.2.06 | Aluminum faced pipe sections: ProRox® pipe sections with reinforced pure aluminum foil facing for the thermal insulation of pipes |
| Cladding (Material standards) | CINI 3.1.02 | Aluminized steel sheeting: Aluminized steel cladding for the finishing of insulation |
| | CINI 3.1.03 | Alu-zinc coated steel sheet: Alu-zinc steel cladding for the finishing of insulation |
| | CINI 3.1.04 | Galvanized steel sheet: Continuous hot dip (Sendzimir) galvanized steel cladding for the finishing of insulation |
| | CINI 3.1.05 | Austenitic stainless steel: Stainless steel cladding for the finishing of insulation |
| | CINI 3.1.11 | GRP: Weather resistant UV-curing glass fiber-reinforced polyester (GRP) |
| Processing guidelines | CINI 1.3.10 | General processing guidelines: Installation instructions for the thermal insulation of hot pipelines and equipment (insulated with mineral wool) |
| | CINI 4.1.00a | Pipes: (Overview) piping insulation details |
| | CINI 4.2.00 | Columns: (Overview) insulation/finishing details overview columns |
| | CINI 4.3.00 | Vessels: (Overview) insulation/finishing detail overview vertical vessels |
| | CINI 4.4.00 | Heat exchangers: (Overview) insulation/finishing details overview horizontal heat exchangers |
| | CINI 4.5.00 | Vessels: (Overview) insulation/finishing details for tanks (operating temperature from 68 °F (20 °C) to 356 °F (180 °C)) |
| | CINI 7.2.01 | Corrosion protection: Corrosion protection under insulation |

h) European standardization (CEN)

In order to remove technical barriers to trade, the European Union decided to develop uniform European product standards. These product standards describe the product properties, as well as the methods of testing for these properties. The minimum requirements for certain product properties still remain a national responsibility and are laid down in each individual country. The EU issues orders in the form of mandates to CEN (the European Committee for Standardization), which they use to develop relevant standards.

For ProRox® insulation, this product standard is the EN 14303 "Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations – Factory-made mineral wool (MW) products – specification". Following ratification, a European standard must be adopted as it stands by the national standardization organizations as a national standard. Deviating national standards must be retracted. Each European standard adopted is published in each EU country with a national prefix, e.g. in Germany: DIN-EN-XXXX; in England (British Standard): BS-EN-XXX

Product properties, test standards

| Product property | Standard | Description |
|--|---|---|
| Thermal conductivity (Piping) | EN ISO 8497 | Heat insulation – Determination of steady-state thermal transmission properties of thermal insulation for circular pipes |
| Thermal conductivity (Boards/Slabs) | EN 12667 | Thermal performance of building materials and products – Determination of thermal resistance by means of guarded hot plate and heat flow meter methods - Products of high or medium thermal resistance |
| Water vapor diffusion resistance coefficient | EN 12086 | Thermal insulating products for building applications – Determination of water vapor transmission properties |
| AS quality | EN 13468 Replaces AGI guideline Q135 | Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations – Determination of trace quantities of water-soluble chloride, fluoride, silicate, sodium ions and pH |
| Hydrophobic treatment | EN 13472 Replaces AGI guideline Q136 | Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations – Determination of short-term water absorption by partial immersion of preformed pipe insulation |
| Maximum service temperature | EN 14706 (for flat products) EN 14707 (for piping) | Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations – Determination of maximum service temperature Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations – Determination of maximum service temperature for preformed pipe insulation |
| Compression resistance | EN 826 | Thermal insulating products for building applications – Determination of compression behavior |
| Air flow resistance | EN 29053 Determination of airflow resistance | Acoustics; Materials for acoustical applications; Determination of airflow resistance (ISO 9053:1991) |

i) CE-mark

The CE marking as it is legally called since 1993 (per directive 93/68/EEC) - abbreviation of French: Conformité Européenne, meaning "European Conformity" is a mandatory conformity mark for products placed on the market in the European Economic Area (EEA). With the CE marking on a product the manufacturer ensures that the product conforms with the essential requirements of the applicable EC directives. Legally, the CE marking is no quality mark. But from August 2012 on, only industrial/mechanical insulation products which comply with the European product standards (see Chapter 2.1.2g) and bear the CE mark may be sold in Europe. A mandatory frame-work will then apply for the key product features of industrial/mechanical insulation materials – such as thermal conductivity, resistance to water vapor transmission, fire behavior,

tolerances etc. The performance of a mineral wool product is summarized in a designation code, which can be found on the labels of the individual products. E.g. for mineral wool:

MW EN 14303-T2-ST(+)-680-WS1-CL10-pH9

- T2 = Thickness tolerance
- ST = Maximum service temperature
- CS = Compressive strength
- WS = Water absorption
- CL = Trace quantities of water soluble chloride
- pH = Level of the pH

The main advantage of the CE-mark and related European standards is that a higher level of transparency is achieved. This allows specifiers, distributors and installers to make a quick and direct comparison between the available products in today's market place.

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.2 Insulation specification

j) DIN Standards & Guidelines

Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V. (DIN; in English, the German Institute for Standardization) is the German national organization for standardization and is that country's ISO member body.

DIN is a registered association (e.V.), founded in 1917, originally as Normenausschuss der deutschen Industrie (NADI, Standardization Committee of German Industry). In 1926, the NADI was renamed Deutscher Normenausschuss (DNA, German Standardization Committee) in order to indicate that standardization covered many fields, not just industrial products. In 1975 the DNA was finally renamed DIN. Since 1975, it has been recognized by the German government as the national standards body and represents German interests at international and European level.

The acronym DIN is often wrongly expanded as Deutsche Industrienorm (German industry standard). This is largely due to the historic origin of the DIN as NADI. The NADI indeed published their standards as DI-Norm (Deutsche Industrienorm, German industry standard).

Designation

The designation of DIN standards shows its origin.

- DIN # is used for German standards with primarily domestic significance or designed as a first step toward international status.
- E DIN # is a draft standard and DIN V # is a preliminary standard.
- DIN EN # is used for the German edition of European standards.
- DIN ISO # is used for the German edition of ISO standards.
- DIN EN ISO # is used if the standard has also been adopted as a European standard.

DIN standards for the validation of insulation materials can be found under European standards. DIN 4140 "Insulation work on industrial installations..." gives guidelines for the validation of insulation material, mounting and fixing. This standard applies to insulation works on industrial plants. These are production and distribution plants for the industry and for technical building appliances, (e.g. appliances, vessels, columns, tanks, steam generators, pipes, heating and ventilation systems, air conditioning units, refrigeration units and hot water installations). With requirements relating to fire protection, the relevant standards or national technical approvals must be observed. This standard does not apply to insulation works performed on building shells, interior walls and inserted ceilings, neither in the shipbuilding and vehicle manufacturing industry, nor within the control area of power plants.

k) AGI

“Arbeitsgemeinschaft Industriebau e.V”. (AGI) is a German association of manufacturers, engineering companies and universities. AGI was founded in 1958 to establish a common platform to exchange best practices within Industry. These practices, which are summarized in the

AGI guidelines (so called “Arbeitsblätter”) are established in cooperation with the German DIN, VDI and CEN members for insulation. The most relevant standard for insulation work is shown on the next page.

More information is available via www.agi-online.de.

| Material standards and design guidelines | Field of application/scope |
|---|--|
| AGI Q02: Insulation works on industrial installations – Terms | The terms used in the AGI Q working documents are defined in this working document. |
| AGI Q03: Construction of thermal and cold insulation systems – Insulation works of industrial plants | This working document applies to insulation works performed on industrial installations. The working document classifies works into thermal insulation works for operating temperatures above the ambient temperature and cold insulation works for operating temperatures below the ambient temperature. |
| AGI Q05: Construction of industrial plants – Bases, design, requirements with regard to the interfaces of plant components and insulation | This working document has been compiled for planners and designers who have to design the industrial plants, including the essential thermal or cold insulation. It examines, in particular, the interfaces between plant construction and insulation. |
| AGI Q101: Insulation works on power plant components – Construction | Working document Q 101 applies to insulation works performed on power plant components such as steam generators and flue gas cleaning systems, pipe systems and steel flues |
| AGI Q103: Insulation works on industrial plants – Electrical tracing | This working document applies to insulation works performed on industrial plants with electrical tracing. |
| AGI Q104: Insulation works on industrial plants – Tracing systems with heat transfer media | This working document applies to insulation works performed on industrial installations, which are heated and/or cooled by means of heat transfer and/or refrigerant media, for example in tracing pipes or half pipe sections. |
| AGI Q132: rock wool as insulation for industrial plants | This working document applies to rock wool insulation, which is used for thermal, cold and acoustic insulation of technical industrial plants and technical building appliances. |
| AGI Q151: Insulation works – Protecting thermal and cold insulation systems on industrial plants against corrosion | This working document applies to corrosion protection coating systems for the surfaces of industrial plants, such as appliances, columns and pipes, which are insulated against heat and cold loss. Since the DIN EN ISO 12944 standard provides no explanations with regard to protecting insulation systems against corrosion, this working document should be considered as a supplement to standard DIN EN ISO 12944. This working document does not apply in respect of adhesive primers. |
| AGI Q152: Insulation works on industrial plants – Protection against moisture penetration | This AGI working document applies to objects where the insulation must be protected against moisture and, above all, against the ingress of liquids, (e.g. water, heat transfer oil). |
| AGI Q153: Insulation works on industrial plants – Mounting supports for support constructions | AGI working document Q 153 applies to the design and construction of mounting supports. They transfer the loads of the insulation onto the support constructions on the object. |
| AGI Q154: Insulation works on industrial plants – support constructions | AGI working document Q 154 applies to the construction of support constructions. |

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.2 Insulation specification

l) BFA WKSB

'Deutsche Bauindustrie' is a German branch organization within the building & construction industry. Part of this organization is the Bundes Fach Abteilungen {(BFA) - 'technical departments'} who are specialized in the technological developments and lobby activities within a specific area of technical expertise. One of them, "BFA WKSB" {Bundes Fach Abteilung Wärme-, Kälte-, Schall-und Brand Schutz}, represents the branche members' interests in industrial insulation, acoustic insulation and fire proofing in buildings. As well as lobbying towards the various organizations and the German government, they recommend best practices and provisions as stated in the technical letters. These practices are established in cooperation with DIN, AGI, CEN, FESI and testing bodies like FIW. The most important technical letters for hot insulation are shown below.

| Technical Letter | Field of application/scope |
|------------------|---|
| 1 | Problems of thermal stress in metal reinforcements of large-dimensional object with elevated service temperatures |
| 3 | Prevention of metal corrosion |
| 4 | System for measurement and recording for industrial insulation cladding. |
| 5 | Problems with the warranty of specified surface temperatures |
| 6 | High profitability through ecologically based insulation thicknesses |
| 9 | Methods of measuring |
| 10 | Measuring point for thermal insulation |
| 11 | Moisture in insulation systems |

More information is available via www.bauindustrie.de

m) FESI

FESI, Fédération Européenne des Syndicats d'Entreprises d'Isolation is the European Federation of Associations of Insulation Companies. FESI was founded in 1970 and is the independent European Federation representing the insulation contracting sector. FESI promotes insulation as one of the best, the most cost effective and sustainable manners to save energy. FESI represents the insulation associations from 16 European countries whose members are active in insulation for industry, commercial building sectors, ship insulation, soundproofing, fire protection and others. The most important FESI documents (guidelines, recommendations) are shown below.

| Document | Description |
|----------|---|
| 04 | Working Manual: System for measurement and recording for industrial insulation cladding (English translation of BFA WKSB letter no. 4 and 2). |
| 05 | Problems associated with the warranty of specified surface temperature. (English translation of BFA WKBS, technical letter no. 5) |
| 06 | "High profitability through ecologically based insulation thicknesses". (English translation of BFA WKBS, technical letter no. 6) |
| 09 | "Principles of metal corrosion". (English translation of BFA WKBS, technical letter no. 3 and 2) |
| A1 | A industrial Acoustics – B Building acoustics – Code of Guarantee |
| 11 | "Problems of thermal stress in metal reinforcements of large-dimensional objects with elevated service temperatures". (English translation BFA WKSB technical letter Nr. 1, 2.) |
| A2 | Basics of Acoustics |
| A3 | "Product characteristics " Acoustic insulation, absorption, attenuation |

More information is available via www.fesi.eu

n) ISO

Headquartered in Switzerland, the International Organization for Standardization (Organization internationale de normalisation), widely known as ISO, is an international-standard-setting body composed of representatives from various national standards organizations. Founded in 1947, the organization promotes and communicates world-wide proprietary industrial and commercial standards. While ISO defines itself as a non-governmental organization, its ability to set standards that often become law, either through treaties or national standards, makes it more powerful than most non-governmental organizations. In practice, ISO acts as a consortium with strong links to governments. Most of the ISO standards for insulation focus on the testing of material properties and are embedded in, for instance, EN standards.

More information is available via www.iso.org

o) VDI 2055

Verein Deutscher Ingenieure (VDI) (English: Association of German Engineers) is an organization of engineers and natural scientists. Established in 1856, today the VDI is the largest engineering association in Western Europe. The role of the VDI in Germany is comparable to that of the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) in the United States. The VDI is not a union. The association promotes the advancement of technology and represents the interests of engineers and of engineering businesses in Germany.

VDI 2055 is the most important guideline for industrial/mechanical insulation. The scope of the guideline includes heat and cold insulation of technical industrial plants and technical building equipment, such as pipes, ducts, vessels, appliances, machines and cold stores. The

minimum insulation thicknesses for heat distribution and warm water pipes in technical building equipment with respect to Germany, are laid down in the regulations concerning energy-saving heat insulation and energy-savings in buildings (EnEV Energy Saving Ordinance). The considerations expressed in this guideline may lead to other insulation thicknesses. With regard to heat insulation in the construction industry, both the EnEV and DIN standard 4108.

Legal requirements must be observed with regard to the fire performance of insulation and the fire resistance classes of insulation, such as federal state building regulations [Landesbauordnungen] and the piping system guidelines of the federal states [Leitungsanlagen-Richtlinien der Bundesländer].

The VDI guideline 2055 also serves as a benchmark for **thermo technical calculations** and measuring systems in relation to industrial and building services installations and for guarantees and conditions of supply with regard to those installations. The guideline covers in detail the calculation of heat flow rates, the design of the insulation thickness according to operational and economic aspects, the technical warranty certificate and the technical conditions in respect of delivery quantities and services. Furthermore, the guideline examines measuring systems and testing methods (for quality assurance).

The VDI 2055 consists of:

- Part 1: Bases for calculation
- Part 2: Measuring, testing and certification of insulation materials
- Part 3: Conditions of supply and purchasing of insulation systems

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.2 Insulation specification

p) British standard

British Standards are produced by BSI British Standards, a division of BSI Group that is incorporated under a Royal Charter and is formally designated as the National Standards Body (NSB) for the UK. The standards produced are titled British Standard XXXX[-P]:YYYY where XXXX is the number of the standard, P is the number of the part of the standard (where the standard is split into multiple parts) and YYYY is the year in which the standard came into effect. British Standards currently has over 27,000 active standards.

The following table provides an overview of the standards and regulations that must be taken observed when insulating industrial plants with ProRox® insulation. On the one hand, they are grouped according to product and material standards, which establish the different insulation properties, and on the other hand, according to validation and design rules.

| Standard | Description |
|--|--|
| BS 5970: Code of practice for thermal insulation of pipework and equipment in the temperature range of -148 °F (-100 °C) to +1600 °F (+870 °C) | This British Standard code of practice describes aspects of thermal insulation for pipework and equipment in the temperature range -148 °F (-100 °C) to +1600 °F (+870 °C). The installation techniques described in this standard can be used outside the temperature range indicated, however, it is recommended that for such applications specialist advice is sought. This standard explains the basic principles that should be followed in selecting insulating systems for specific requirements. |
| BS 5422: Method for specifying thermal insulating materials for pipes, tanks, vessels, ductwork and equipment operating within the temperature range -40 °F (-40 °C) to +1300 °F (+700 °C) | This British Standard describes a method for specifying requirements for thermal insulating materials on pipes, tanks, vessels, ductwork and equipment for certain defined applications and conditions within the temperature range -40 °F (-40 °C) to +1300 °F (+700 °C). It gives the recommended thickness and required performance of thermal insulation material for various applications. |
| BS 1710 Specification for identification of pipelines and services | Colours for identifying pipes conveying fluids in liquid or gaseous condition in land installations and on board ships. Colour specifications in accordance with BS 4800. |
| BS 3958-Part 4: Thermal insulating materials. Bonded preformed man-made mineral fiber pipe sections | Physical and chemical requirements, dimensions and finishes for pipe sections generally for use at elevated temperatures.” |
| BS 3958-Part 3: Thermal insulating materials. Metal mesh faced man-made mineral fiber mattresses | Specifies composition, moisture content, physical and chemical requirements for mineral fiber mattresses, faced on one or both sides with flexible metal mesh. |
| BS 3958-Part 5: Thermal insulating materials. Specification for bonded man-made mineral fiber boards (slabs) | Composition, moisture content, physical and chemical requirements, and standard sizes. Products are divided into four groups according to thermal conductivity and temperature range. |

Test methods

| | |
|---|--|
| BS 476-4 Fire test on building materials | Part 4, Non combustibility test for materials Part 6, Methods of test for fire propagation of products Part 7, Method for classification of the surface spread of flame products |
| BS EN 13467 Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations | Determination of dimensions, squareness and linearity of preformed pipe insulation |
| BS EN 13468 Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations | Determination of trace quantities of water soluble chloride, fluoride, silicate, sodium ions and pH |
| BS EN 13469 Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations | Determination of water vapor transmission properties of preformed pipe insulation |
| BS EN 13470 Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations | Determination of the apparent density of preformed pipe insulation |
| BS EN 13471 Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations | Determination of the coefficient of thermal expansion |
| BS EN 13472 Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations | Determination of short term water absorption by partial immersion of preformed pipe insulation |
| BS EN 12664 Thermal performance of building materials and products | Determination of thermal resistance by means of guarded hot plate and heat flow meter methods. Dry and moist products of medium and low thermal resistance |
| BS EN 12667 Thermal performance of building materials and products | Determination of thermal resistance by means of guarded hot plate and heat flow meter methods. Products of high and medium thermal resistance |
| BS EN 12939:2001 Thermal performance of building materials and products | Determination of thermal resistance by means of guarded hot plate and heat flow meter methods. Thick products of high and medium thermal resistance |

q) NF (Norme Française) mark

The NF mark is an official French quality mark, issued by the Association Française de Normalisation (French Association for Standardization, AFNOR), which certifies compliance with the French national standards. The use of the NF mark has been entrusted to AFNOR Certification (a subsidiary of the AFNOR Group).

The NF quality mark is not a trademark as such, but is a collective certification mark. It carries undisputable proof that a product satisfies the safety and/or quality specifications defined within the corresponding certification standard.

More information is available via www.afnor.org

This standard consists of:

- French, European or international standards
- Supplementary specifications regarding the product or service and the quality system in place in the company as comprised in the certification rules, specific to each product or service.

The certification standards are drawn up in collaboration with all relevant stakeholders: manufacturers or service providers, trade organizations, consumers, public authorities and technical bodies. Compliance with French standards is mandatory in France for all supply or construction contracts for public authorities (government contract).

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.2 Insulation specification

| | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|---|
| General | NF EN ISO 7345 July 1996 | Thermal insulation – Physical quantities and definitions |
| | NF EN ISO 9251 July 1996 | Thermal insulation – Heat transfer conditions and properties of materials - Vocabulary |
| | NF EN ISO 9288 July 1996 | Thermal insulation – Heat transfer by radiation – Physical quantities and definitions |
| | NF EN ISO 8497 December 1996 | Thermal insulation – Determination of steady-state thermal transmission properties of thermal insulation for circular pipes |
| | NF EN ISO 9229 September 2007 | Thermal insulation – Vocabulary |
| | NF EN ISO 12241 October 1998 | Thermal insulation for building equipment and industrial installations - Calculation rules – Classification index P 50-730 |
| Property | NF EN ISO 13787 August 2003 | Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations - Determination of declared thermal conductivity |
| | NF EN 12667 July 2001 | Thermal performance of building materials and products – Determination of thermal resistance by means of guarded hot plate and heat flow meter methods – Products of high and medium thermal resistance |
| | NF EN 8497 September 1996 | Thermal insulation - Determination of steady-state thermal transmission properties of thermal insulation for circular pipes (ISO 8497:1994) |
| | NF EN 12939 March 2001 | Thermal performance of building materials and products – Determination of thermal resistance by means of guarded hot plate and heat flow meter methods – Thick products of high and medium thermal resistance |
| | NF EN 14303 October 2005 | Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations - Factory made mineral wool (MW) products – Specification |
| Test standard | NF EN 1609 July 1997 | Thermal insulating products for building applications - Determination of short term water absorption by partial immersion |
| | NF EN 13472 December 2002 | Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations – Determination of short term water absorption by partial immersion of preformed pipe insulation |
| | NF ISO 2528 September 2001 | Sheet materials – Determination of water vapor transmission rate – Gravimetric (dish) method |
| | NF EN 12086 November 1997 | Thermal insulating products for building applications – Determination of water vapor transmission properties |
| | NF EN 12087 November 1997 | Thermal insulating products for building applications - Determination of long term water absorption by immersion |
| | NF EN 12087/A1 January 2007 | Thermal insulating products for building applications - Determination of long term water absorption by immersion |
| | NF EN 14706 February 2006 | Thermal insulating products for building equipment and industrial installations - Determination of maximum service temperature |
| | NF EN 14707/IN1 March 2008 | Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations - Determination of maximum service temperature for preformed pipe insulation |
| | NF EN 14707+A1 March 2008 | Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations - Determination of maximum service temperature for preformed pipe insulation |
| | NF EN 1602 July 1997 | Thermal insulating products for building applications – Determination of the apparent density |

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| Test standard | NF EN 1602 July 1997 | Thermal insulating products for building applications – Determination of the apparent density |
| | NF EN 826 September 1996 | Thermal insulating products for building applications – Determination of the apparent density |
| | NF EN 13468 September 2002 | Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations - Determination of trace quantities of water soluble chloride, fluoride, silicate, sodium ions and pH |
| Insulating materials | NF EN 13162 February 2009 | Thermal insulation products for buildings – Factory made mineral wool (MW) products – Specification |
| | NF P75-101 October 1983 | Thermal insulation for building purposes – Definition |
| Assembly | NF E86-303 | Insulation work – Thermal insulation of circuits, appliances and accessories from -80 °F (-112 °C) to +1200 °F (+650 °C) - Part 1-1: contract bill of technical clauses - Part 1-2: general criteria for selection of materials - Part 2: contract bill of special clauses (Commercial reference for standards NF DTU 45.2 P1-1, P1-2 and P2) |
| | May 1989 | Industrial installations – thermal insulation of tanks – coating support |
| | NF EN 12213 | Cryogenic vessels – Methods for performance evaluation of thermal insulation |
| | March 1999 | Cryogenic vessels – Methods for performance evaluation of thermal insulation |
| Covering | XP P 34-301 | Steel sheet and strip either coil coated or organic film counter-glued or colaminated for building purposes |
| | NF EN 485 | Aluminum and aluminum alloys – Sheet, strip and plate - Part 1 - 4 |
| | NF EN 10088-2 | Stainless steels – Technical delivery conditions for sheets and strips of corrosion resistant steels for general purposes. Part 1-5 |

* Please consult the other parts for further details regarding corrosion protection of steel structures.

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.2 Insulation specification

r) Unified Technical Document (Document Technique Unifié, DTU)

Object and scope of the DTUs

A DTU is a French building regulation and comprises a list of contractual technical stipulations applicable to construction work contracts. The specific documents included in the works contract, in accordance with the specifications for each individual project, must specify all of the required provisions that are not outlined within the DTU, or all those deemed relevant for inclusion by the contracting parties, as a complement to or in deviation from those specified in the DTU.

In particular, the DTUs are generally unable to suggest technical provisions for performing work on buildings constructed using outdated techniques.

The establishment of technical clauses for contracts of this type results from a reflection on the part of those parties who are responsible for designing and implementing the work. Where it proves to be pertinent, these clauses are based on the content of the DTU, as well as on all knowledge acquired in practice in relation to these outdated techniques.

The DTUs refer to construction products or procedures for the execution of works, the ability of which to satisfy the technical provisions of the DTUs is known through experience.

Where this document refers to that effect to a Technical Evaluation or Technical Application Document, or to a product certification, the contractor may suggest products to the contracting authority that benefit from current testing methods in other Member States of the European Economic Area, which they deem to be comparable and which are certified by accredited organizations, by the organizations that are signatories to 'E.A.' agreements, or in the absence thereof, which evidence their compliance with the EN 45011 standard. The contractor must then supply the contracting authority with the evidence needed in order to evaluate the comparability.

The conditions under which the contracting authority shall accept such an equivalent are defined within the Contract Bill of Special Clauses of this DTU.

More information is available via www.afnor.org

2.1.3 Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in North America

In North America there are no regulations or codes governing the design and installation of industrial/mechanical insulation. Best practices is generally adopted following a variety of different standards & guidelines published by bodies such as ASTM, NACE, MICA & PIP.

Many ownership groups in North America have developed their own internal standards and guidelines which are used throughout various projects. The intention of the PIP guidelines is to consolidate these internal standards from ownership groups to create a uniform approach.

The commonly referred to standards and guidelines in North America include:

- ASTM C1696
- NACE SP0198
- MICA National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards

In addition, ASTM and CAN/ULC material, property and compliance standards are also important. Refer to ASTM chart on page 92. In Canada, CAN/ULC S102 and S114 are referred to for surface burning characteristics and non-combustibility.

General building insulation requirements are covered by state and provincial building codes and standards. Keep in mind that ANSI along with other organizations and societies (e.g. NACE and ASME) may impact other aspects of the system being insulated (e.g. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code).

2.1.4 Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in Europe

a) European standardization

In order to remove technical barriers to trade, the European Union decided to develop uniform European product standards. These product standards describe the product properties, as well as the methods of testing for these properties. The minimum requirements for certain product properties still remain a national responsibility and are laid down in each individual country. The EU issues orders in the form of mandates to CEN (the European Committee for Standardization), which the CEN uses to develop relevant standards. The majority of orders have now been commissioned and initial harmonized standards, such as the insulation standards for structural engineering (DIN EN 13262), have been published. The European product standards for industrial/mechanical insulation are currently being compiled. For rock wool (stone wool), this product standard is the prEN 14303 "Thermal insulation products for building equipment and industrial installations – Factory-made mineral wool (MW) products – specification". The official implementation of this standard is expected to take place in 2009.

Each European standard adopted is published in each EU country with a national prefix, e.g. in Germany: DIN-EN-XXXX; in England (British Standard): BS-EN-XXX. The (as of yet) unratified standards are denoted with the letter "pr" (for proof) e.g. prEN-14303.

2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.4 Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in Europe

b) Quality Assurance

It is essential that, in addition to the design quality, the product properties guaranteed by the insulation manufacturer, for example, the thermal conductivity or temperature resistance are adhered to during processing in order to achieve flawless operation of thermal or cold insulation constructed according to operational and economic criteria. Well-known insulation manufacturers guarantee this through extensive internal and external quality control. The VDI 2055 guideline "Thermal and cold insulation of industrial installations and building equipment" regulates this voluntary quality assurance.

The VDI 2055 quality assurance of insulation products is classified as a quality control, consisting of an external and internal quality control, as well as a certification of insulation materials for industrial installations. The property values specified on the product data sheets, prospectuses or price lists of the manufacturer, such as the thermal conductivity or maximum service temperature for example, form the basis for the quality control. As a result, a user or producer of VDI 2055 quality assured insulation products can safely assume that even publicized property values are subject to a quality control. When the product conforms to the properties specified by the manufacturer in the product data sheets, the certification body grants the manufacturer the right to use the certification mark "Checked in accordance with VDI 2055".

The following text outlines the product properties that must, at the very least, be controlled in the case of a mineral wool insulation product, in order for the VDI 2055 inspection mark to be granted:

- Thermal conductivity as a curve ($\lambda = f(t)$ or $f(tm)$)
- Dimensions (length, width, depth)
- Apparent density
- Maximum service temperature

In addition, the following product properties are usually controlled externally:

- Fire performance
- Hydrophobic properties
- Water-soluble chloride content (AS quality)

Internal quality control

The manufacturer takes samples during production and tests for the relevant product properties. For properties such as thermal conductivity, indirect measurement methods can also be used. The manufacturer must have a quality management procedure in place, which instigates the measures required to rectify the defect in the event of deviations from the reference values.

External quality control

For the purposes of external quality control in accordance with VDI 2055, the manufacturer must enter into a supervision contract with a leading testing body, such as the FIW (Research Institute for thermal insulation materials).

The external quality control is made up of the following elements:

- Auditing of the internal quality control
- Verification of the labelling of the products
- Product testing

Certification

Upon correct implementation of the internal and external quality control of insulation products manufactured according to VDI 2055, DIN CERTCO developed a certificate with regard to conformity to VDI 2055, to the data sheets of the VDI AG "Quality Control" and to the technical data of the manufacturer.

c) RAL quality mark

RTI Import stone wool insulation products bear the RAL quality mark. They are therefore subject, in addition to the stringent criteria of the quality assessment and test specifications of the (German) Mineral Wool Quality Community [Gütegemeinschaft Mineralwolle e. V.], to continuous inspections, which guarantee compliance with the criteria of the German legislation governing hazardous substances and with the EU directive. In accordance with both the German and European standards, bio-soluble RTI Import stone wool offers outstanding thermal, cold, acoustic and fire protection whilst meeting a high safety standard.

d) No prohibition on manufacture and usage

The German federal government has laid down criteria for the appraisal of mineral wool insulation products in the Ordinance on Hazardous Substances [Gefahrstoffverordnung] and the Chemicals Prohibition Ordinance [Chemikalien-Verbotsverordnung]. Products not meeting these criteria cannot be manufactured and used in Germany. ProRox® stone wool insulation products fulfil these requirements. The prohibition on manufacture and usage does not apply to ProRox® stone wool insulation products. Studies have shown that stone wool is a safe product to live and work with; it is amongst the most well-documented and tested of all building materials. A Safe Use Instruction Sheet (SUIS) from ROCKWOOL Technical Insulation Group (RTI Import) is available upon request.

2.1.5 Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry within the Benelux

The local system of standards and regulations in the Netherlands and Belgium focuses primarily on building construction. The Dutch CINI manual is adopted as a general guideline for mounting and fixing by the majority of industry owners and construction engineers. Product testing often refers to AGI, DIN and European standards. Refer to the previous chapters for more information.

2.1.6 Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in Germany

The German system of standards and regulations is primarily composed of the following constituents: DIN (German Institute for Standardization) standards, VDI (Association of German Engineers) guidelines, AGI (German Working Group for Industrial Construction) working documents, VDI quality assurance, and RAL (German Institute for Quality Assurance and Certification) quality marks. Furthermore, there are additional regulations for special fields of application, such as working standards on the part of the operator, which must be observed. Most of the standards, regulations and guidelines are adapted within the local project specifications.

b) Insulation code number according to AGI Q132

AGI guideline Q132 lays down the material properties and the requirements that are imposed on rock wool insulation for industrial installations. The insulation materials are denoted with a ten-figure code number (so called "Dämmstoffkennziffer"), consisting of five pairs of digits. In this case, the first pair of digits "10" represents rock wool. The further pairs of digits represent the:

- Delivery form
- Thermal conductivity group
- Maximum service temperature group
- Apparent density group

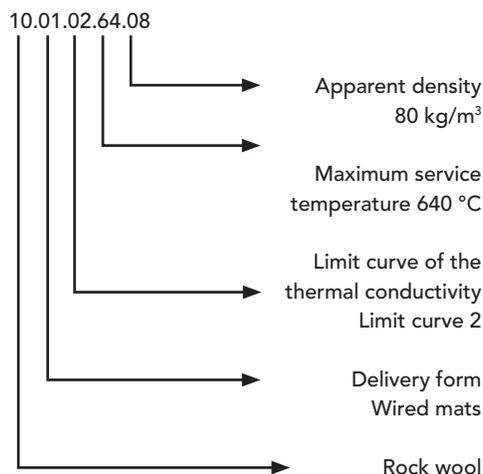
2.1 Norms & Standards

2.1.6 Relevant guidelines & standards for the industrial/mechanical insulation industry in Germany

| Rock wool insulation | | Delivery form | | Thermal conductivity | | Maximum service temperature | | Nominal apparent density | | |
|----------------------|-----------|---------------|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|-----|--------------------------|-------------------|-----|
| Group | Type | Group | Form | Group | Delivery form | Group | °C | Group | kg/m ³ | |
| 10 | Rock Wool | 01 | Wired mats | 01 | Limit curve 1 | 10 | 100 | 02 | 20 | |
| | | 02 | Lamella mats | 02 | Limit curve 2 | 12 | 120 | 03 | 30 | |
| | | 03 | Lamella mats load-bearing | 03 | Limit curve 3 | 14 | 140 | 04 | 40 | |
| | | 04 | (Pipe) sections | 04 | Limit curve 4 | 16 | 160 | 05 | 50 | |
| | | 05 | (Pipe) elbows | 05 | Limit curve 5 | • | • | 06 | 60 | |
| | | 06 | Felts | | | • | • | 07 | 70 | |
| | | 07 | Wraps (Mats) | | | • | • | 08 | 80 | |
| | | 08 | Boards (Slabs) | | | 72 | 720 | 09 | 90 | |
| | | 09 | Segments | | | 74 | 740 | 10 | 100 | |
| | | 10 | Loose wool | | | 76 | 760 | 11 | 110 | |
| | | | | | | | | 12 | 120 | |
| | | | | | | | | | 13 | 130 |
| | | | | | | | | | 18 | 180 |
| | | | | | | | | | 99 | * |

* The digits 99 apply only to (pipe) sections.

Using ROCKWOOL wired mat with a density of 80kg/m³ as an example results in the following insulation code:



2. Theory

2.2 Product properties & test methods

The requirements for industrial insulation are high and varied. Piping, boilers, storage tanks require insulation materials with particular properties. Although the application and type of products may vary, the basic definition of all product properties is the same.

- 2.2.1 Fire behavior
- 2.2.2 Thermal conductivity
- 2.2.3 Maximum service temperature
- 2.2.4 Water leachable chloride content
- 2.2.5 Water repellency
- 2.2.6 Water vapor transmission
- 2.2.7 Longitudinal air flow resistance
- 2.2.8 Compression resistance
- 2.2.9 Density

The relevant standards, guidelines and project specifications are explained in 2.1. The following text outlines the most important product properties of stone wool (mineral wool) insulation products for insulation of technical installations.

2.2.1 Fire behavior

a) Introduction

The fire load in a building or industrial installation is increased considerably by flammable/combustible insulation materials. Non-combustible insulation materials such as mineral wool, with a melting point higher than 1800 °F (1000 °C), on the other hand, not only have a positive impact on the fire load, but also constitute a certain form of fire protection for the insulation installations.

Often one confuses fire resistance with reaction to fire. **Fire resistance** indicates how well a building component, for instance, can hold back the fire and prevent it from spreading from one room to another – for a stated period of time. Does it function as a fire shield or not? Fire resistance is an extremely important characteristic. For example, a vessel containing flammable liquids. Serious accidents/explosions can occur if a vessel is not protected against fire from the outside.

Reaction to fire indicates the smoke development and combustibility / flammability if the insulation is exposed to fire.

b) CEN standards

A distinction is generally made between non-combustible and combustible building materials. The insulation materials are exposed to fire. The flammability and smoke development and droplets of melted insulation are observed and rated.

The classification of insulation materials depends on the relevant fire standards. In the second half of the 20th century, almost every country in Europe developed their own national system for fire testing and classification of building materials in particular. The European Community has developed a new set of **CEN standards**. The “Reaction to fire” classes test three properties: spread of fire, smoke intensity and burning droplets.

Spread of Fire

The building components are classified in class A1, A2, B, C, D, E and F. Additional classifications provide information on products tending to produce smoke and burning droplets or particles.

- **Class A1** products are non combustible. They will not cause any sustained flaming in the non combustibility test.
- **Class A2** product must not show any sustained flaming for more than 20 seconds in the non combustibility test. The A2 products have to be tested for fire contribution, smoke intensity and burning droplets.
- **Class B** product flaming must not spread more than 6" (150 mm) in 60 seconds, when evaluated by a small flame test. Class B products have to be tested for fire contribution, smoke intensity and burning droplets
- **Class C** product contributes to flashover after 10 min.
- **Class D** product contributes to flashover after 2 min.
- **Class E** product for less than two minutes.
- **Class F** is not tested.

2.2 Product properties & test methods

2.2.1 Fire behavior

Smoke intensity

Smoke intensity is only tested in the classes from A2 to D. There are 3 intensity levels; s1, s2 and s3. Smoke intensity is vital for people trapped in a burning building. The major cause of death in these circumstances is smoke inhalation.

Burning droplets

Burning droplets are also tested on building materials in the classes A2 to E. There are three classes. No droplets (d0). Droplets that burn out in less than 10 seconds (d1) and droplets that burn for more than 10 seconds (d2).

ROCKWOOL products

Due to its nature, mineral wool is non combustible. Therefore all products are classified as class A1.

c) Project specifications

Many industrial plant owners still refer to the American (ASTM) Standards or "old" local standards. Some of the most important examples are stated below.

For projects outside Europe, many plant owners tend to use the American ASTM E84 or the Canadian equivalent UL723. Both standards solely focus on the surface burning characteristics (flame propagation across the surface of insulation materials).

In Germany, the building material classes for insulation materials for industrial/mechanical insulation are classified according to DIN standard 4102-1. A distinction is made between non flammable building materials in class A1 and A2, and flammable building materials in classes B1 to B3.

- A1 non-flammable
- A2 non-flammable
- B1 flame resistant
- B2 normally inflammable
- B3 highly flammable (cannot be used in Germany)

Alongside the implementation of the European product standards for industrial/mechanical insulation, the "European building material classes", the Euroclasses, are also being implemented. In that case, the products are classified in accordance with the standard DIN EN 13501-1 "Fire classification of building products and building elements – Part 1: Classification using test class data from reaction to fire tests" in combination with the specifications of the European product standard.

Other local (often building) standards may apply occasionally. e.g.:

- IBC (International Building Code): USA
- NBCC (National Building Code of Canada)
- NFPA (National Fire Protection Association): North America
- UL (Underwriters Laboratory)
- FM (Factory Mutual)

Insurance

UL 1709 ("Standard for Rapid Rise Fire Tests of Protection Materials for Structural Steel") is an example of a standard that insurance providers may require in certain environments such as petrochemical facilities, refineries, pulp and paper mills. When working on projects requiring standards such as UL 1709, be aware some standards apply to systems and not the individual material component.

The ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team can advise designers and manufacturers of installations who are faced with such requirements. Many of the ProRox® insulation materials are tested and/or certified in accordance with several local and international standards for reaction to fire.

2.2.2 Thermal conductivity

The material property defining heat flow through an insulation material is thermal conductivity, “ λ ” (or “ k ”). It indicates the heat flow rate “ Q ” through unit area of material “ A ” induced by unit temperature gradient “ $\Delta T / L$ ” in a direction perpendicular to that unit area (Heat-Flux per unit temperature difference “ ΔT ” across a unit thickness “ L ” of material).

$$\lambda = \frac{\text{Heat-Flux}}{\text{Unit-Temperature-Gradient}} = \frac{Q/A}{(\Delta T/L)} = \frac{(BTU/hr)/ft^2}{(F/ft)} = BTU / hr \cdot ft \cdot ^\circ F$$

Expressed on an inch-basis this is: $\frac{(BTU/hr)/ft^2}{(F/in)} = BTU \cdot in / hr \cdot ft^2 \cdot ^\circ F$

The unit of thermal conductivity is BTU.in/hr-ft².°F (W/m.K). The thermal conductivity depends on the temperature, apparent density, fiber material, fiber dimension and fiber structure and orientation within the insulation and is made up of the following parts:

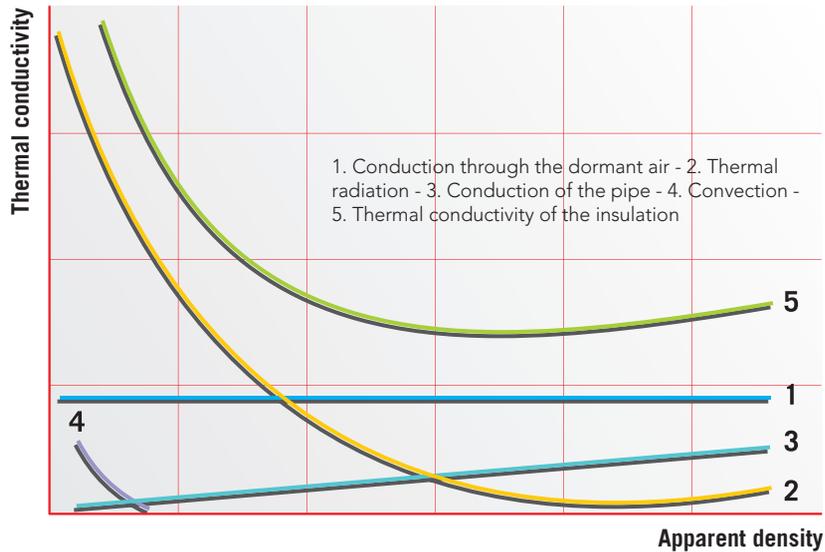
- Thermal conduction of the dormant air in spaces between the fibers
- Thermal radiation
- Thermal conduction through the fibers
- Convection

The dependency of these heat transport mechanisms on apparent density and temperature are shown in the graphs below. The individual transport mechanisms cannot be measured separately using existing measurement techniques, but can be measured together to allow thermal conductivity to be determined.

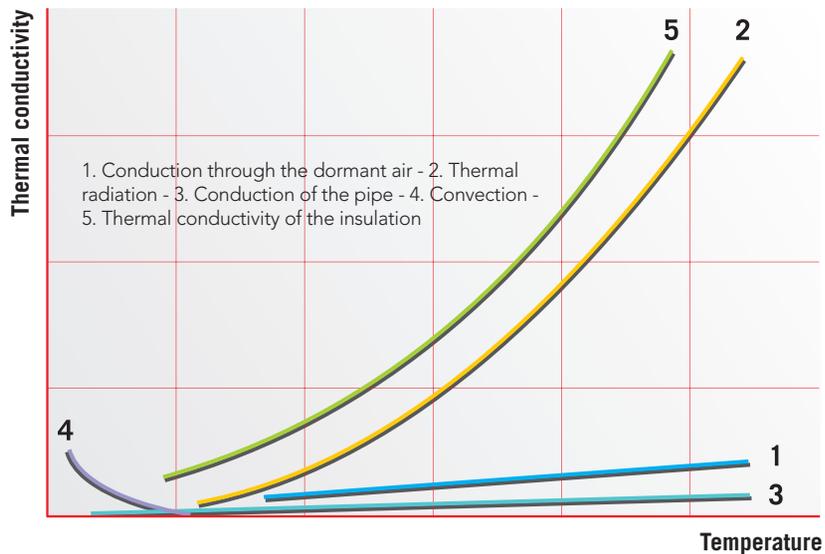
2.2 Product properties & test methods

2.2.2 Thermal conductivity

Fundamental dependency of the thermal conductivity upon the apparent density at a certain temperature



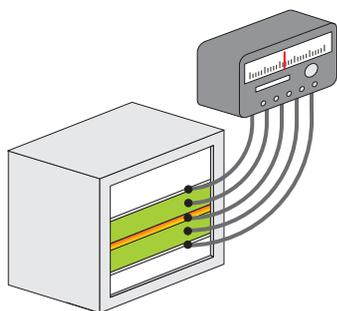
Fundamental dependency of the thermal conductivity upon the temperature for a certain apparent density



Thermal conductivities for industrial/mechanical insulation can be measured according to the test methods below.

Guarded hot plate apparatus test method

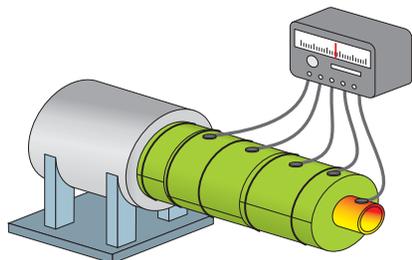
The thermal conductivity of flat products, boards (slabs) and wired mats can be measured with the **guarded hot plate apparatus** according to ASTM C177 or EN12667.



The core components of the apparatus usually consist of two cold-surface units and a guarded hot-surface unit. The insulation material to be measured is sandwiched between these units. The thermal conductivity is calculated at the mean temperature between the hot and the cold side and expressed at the hot face temperature.

Hot pipe apparatus test method

The thermal conductivity of pipe sections and flexible wraps (mats) can be measured with the hot pipe apparatus according to ASTM C335 or EN ISO 8497.



The core consists of a hot pipe with a length of 10 feet (3m). The thermal conductivity is calculated at the mean temperature between the hot and cold side and expressed at the mean temperature. The main difference is that the hot pipe apparatus test method includes the seams within the insulation. This explains why the measured values will be higher than the guarded hot plate apparatus test.

A distinction is drawn between the definition of thermal conductivity.

■ Laboratory thermal conductivity

Thermal conductivity is measured under laboratory conditions with the guarded hot plate apparatus or hot pipe apparatus test method.

■ Nominal (or declared) thermal conductivity

Thermal conductivity specified by the manufacturer, allowing for production related variations in quality and possible ageing, for example caused by gas exchange in closed cell insulation materials.

■ Practical thermal conductivity

Declared thermal conductivity including the influence of joints, design uncertainties, temperature differences, convection, changes in density, moisture absorption and ageing. These effects are taken into consideration using supplementary factors.

■ Operational thermal conductivity

Practical thermal conductivity, whereby the supplementary values for insulation related bridges, such as bearing and support structures are included in the value.

2.2 Product properties & test methods

2.2.3 Maximum service temperature

The temperature at which an insulation material is used should be within the temperature range specified for the material, in order to provide satisfactory long-term service under conditions of use.

This temperature is defined as maximum service temperature. The following factors should be considered when selecting insulation materials to be used at elevated operating temperatures.

- Ability to withstand loads and vibrations
- Loss of compression strength after heating
- Linear shrinkage after heating
- Change in thickness after heating and loading
- Internal self-heating (exothermic reaction or punking) phenomena
- Type of finishing of the insulation
- Support structures for the insulation
- Support structures for the cladding

IMPORTANT NOTE

The maximum service temperature of insulation materials can be tested in accordance with the test methods: EN 14706 and -7 (replaces AGI Q 132), ASTM C411 or BS2972. Each test standard has a different test method and its own criteria. ASTM C411 and BS2972 can be used to determine the maximum operating temperature at which an insulation material can be used, without its insulating capacity deteriorating. EN 14706 and -7 are used to classify insulation materials according to their behavior at high temperatures based upon time-load exposure. Due to the effect of load during testing, the measure maximum service temperature in accordance with EN 14706 and -7 is lower than the other standards and therefore tends to reflect a more practical temperature limit for design performance.

ASTM C411

ASTM C411 is the standard test method for hot-surface performance of high-temperature thermal insulation.

This standard covers the determination of the performance of wraps (mats), boards (slabs) and pipe sections when exposed to simulated hot-surface application conditions.

Wraps (mats) and boards (slabs) are tested with the heating plate or pipe apparatus. The heating plate or pipe is uniformly heated to the declared maximum service temperature. Products are exposed to one sided heating.

ASTM C411 places no specific demands on the product performance after heating. Only the following results must be reported.

- Extent of cracking, other visible changes
- Any evidence of flaming, glowing, smouldering, smoking, etc.
- Decrease in thickness, warpage, delamination
- Sagging pipe (pipe insulation)

BS 2972

This standard specifies test methods for the various properties of inorganic thermal insulation materials. Section six "heat stability of this standard" is designed to determine the performance of insulation materials when exposed to heating for 24 hours in an oven or furnace at the designed temperature.

BS 2972 places no specific demands on the product performance after heating. Only the following results must be reported:

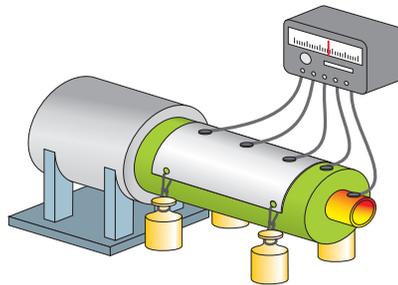
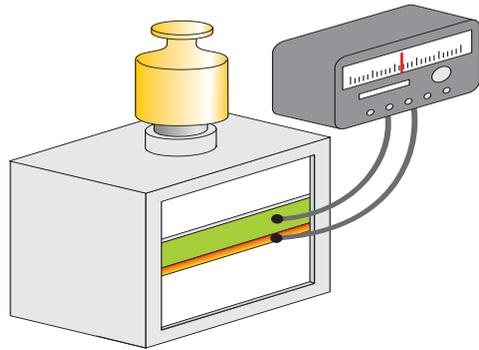
- Average percentage change of length, width, thickness and volume of specimens;
- Percentage change of mass of the specimens before and after the test
- Change in compression strength of the specimens before and after the test.

According to BS 3958 “standard specification for thermal insulation materials”, the insulation material shall maintain its general form and shall not suffer visible deterioration of fibrous structure when heated to the maximum service temperature.

EN14706 (replaces AGI Q132)

The maximum service temperature replaces the term classification temperature, which was still the customary term in the AGI G 132 of 1996. It is recorded in the laboratory under steady conditions, and takes into account the delivery form. The maximum service temperature for flat products is determined according to the EN 14706 standard and is determined according to the EN 14707 for pipe sections. During the test, the sample insulation material is loaded with 500 Pa pressure, which is equal to a load of approximately 10.4 PSF (0.5 kN/m²).

The sample is then heated on one side at a heating rate of 9 °F/min (5 K/min), until the target maximum service temperature is reached. The temperature is then maintained for 72 hours, before the insulation is allowed to cool down naturally to the ambient temperature. The deformation of the insulation is measured throughout the entire procedure. The deformation is not permitted to exceed 5 % throughout the entire testing process.



2.2 Product properties & test methods

2.2.3 Maximum service temperature

Application of maximum service temperature

The practical application of the test methods varies by country and plant owner. In case of special conditions, where the insulation is permanently exposed to high dynamic loads and temperatures (e.g. Power Plants), a considered insulation selection is required as it cannot be included within the measurements. This can be done based on expert judgement or by using the reduction factors (f_a) as defined in the German Standard AGI Q101 "Insulation works on power plant components". The calculated service temperature is generally below the maximum service temperature.

When selecting a suitable insulation material in terms of the maximum service temperature, the external influences affecting the insulation system must be considered, for example:

- Static loads (e.g. cladding)
- Dynamic loads (e.g. oscillations)
- Type of construction (with or without a spacer).

The table shown on the following page, showing general reduction ratios f_a for determining the working temperature, is taken from AGI Q101.

In this respect, the maximum service temperature should be multiplied by f_a .

Reduction ratio (f_a) for determining the working temperature

| Reduction ratio (f_a) | Maximum service temperature | | With spacer and support construction | Without spacer and support construction | With spacer and support construction + air space |
|---|-----------------------------|------|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| | (°F) | (°C) | | | |
| Pipes ≤ NPS 20 (DN 500) | 752 | 400 | 1.0 | 0.9 | 0.9 |
| | 1076 | 580 | 0.9 | 0.9 | 0.9 |
| | 1310 | 710 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.8 |
| Pipes ≥ NPS 20 (DN 500) | 752 | 400 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.9 |
| | 1076 | 580 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.9 |
| | 1310 | 710 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.9 |
| Flue gas ducts, hot air ducts, steel chimneys, vessels, gas turbine ducts | 752 | 400 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.9 |
| | 1076 | 580 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.9 |
| | 1310 | 710 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.8 |
| Boiler walls | | | 0.8 | | |
| Within range of boiler roof | | | 0.9 | | |
| Dead spaces | | | 0.8 | | |

2.2.4 Water leachable chloride content

The corrosion resistance of steel is increased by the addition of alloying elements such as chromium, nickel and molybdenum. Since this alloying results in a so-called austenitic (face-centred cubic) atomic structure, these types of steel are also called austenitic steels.

Despite their generally high resistance to corrosion, these steels tend to exhibit stress corrosion under certain conditions. Three boundary conditions must all be fulfilled in order for stress corrosion cracking to occur:

- The material must be susceptible to stress corrosion.
- Tensile stresses must be present in the component (for example, as a result of thermal elongations).
- There must be a specific attacking agent.

These specific attacking agents include, for example, chloride ions. An insulation material with an extremely low quantity of water-leachable chlorides must therefore be used to insulate objects made from austenitic stainless steel.

For this application, only those insulation materials that are manufactured with a low water leachable chloride content may be used. The classification criteria will depend on the used standard. In general, a distinction can be made between American ASTM standards and European EN standards.

ASTM C871

“Standard Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of Thermal Insulation Materials for Leachable Chloride, Fluoride, Silicate, and Sodium Ions”.

This standard covers the laboratory procedures for the determination of the mentioned ions which accelerate stress corrosion of stainless steel. If the results of the chemical analysis for the leachable ions chloride, sodium and silicate fall in the acceptable area of the graph in ASTM C795 and also pass ASTM C692, the insulation material should not cause stress corrosion cracking.

ASTM C692

“Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Influence of Thermal Insulations on External Stress Corrosion Cracking Tendency of Austenitic Stainless Steel”.

This standard covers the procedures for the laboratory evaluation of thermal insulation materials that may actively contribute to external stress corrosion cracking (ESCC) of austenitic stainless steel due to soluble chlorides within the insulation. This corrosion test consists of using specimens of insulation to conduct distilled or deionized water by wicking or dripping to an outside surface, through the insulation, to a hot inner surface of stressed stainless steel for a period of 28 days. If leachable chlorides are present, they will concentrate on the hot surface by evaporation. At the conclusion of the 28-day test period, the stainless steel coupons are removed, cleaned and inspected for stress corrosion cracks. To pass the test no cracks may be found on the surface of the coupons.

AS-Quality (AGI Q135 – EN 13468)

The following acceptance criteria apply for insulation materials of AS-Quality. The average of six test samples must exhibit a water leachable chloride content of ≤ 10 ppm (10 mg/kg). The maximum value of individual measurements must not exceed 12 ppm (12 mg/kg).

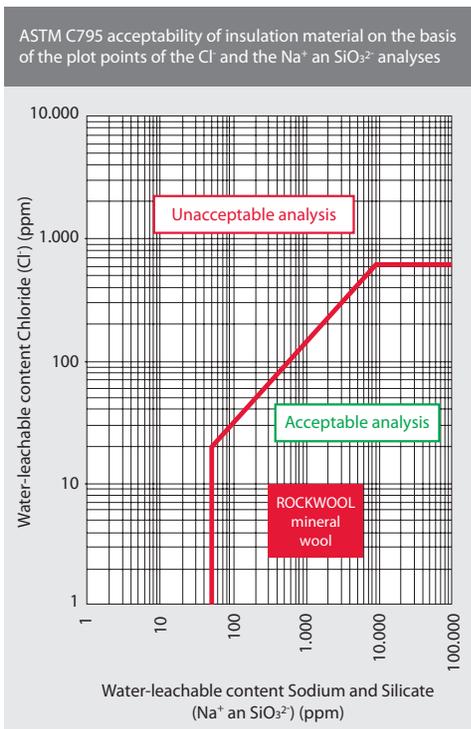
2.2 Product properties & test methods

2.2.4 Water leachable chloride content

ASTM C795

“Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel”.

This specification covers non-metallic thermal insulation for use in contact with austenitic stainless steel piping and equipment. In addition to meeting the requirements of this standard, the insulation materials must pass the preproduction test requirements of ASTM C692, for stress corrosion effects on austenitic stainless steel, and the confirming quality control, chemical requirements when tested according to ASTM C871. ASTM C795 shows the results of ASTM C871 in a graph to illustrate a range of acceptable chloride concentrations in conjunction with sodium plus silicate concentrations (see graph illustration below).



2.2.5 Water repellency

The thermal conductivity and therefore the insulating capacity of mineral wool insulation materials are considerably impaired by the penetration of moisture into the material. Wet insulation material can also contribute to corrosion. Therefore, insulation materials must be dry and protected against moisture during storage, construction and after being fitted. To protect the material against the ingress of moisture, mineral wool insulation materials are offered with a hydrophobic treatment.

Hydrophobic treatment makes it difficult for water to penetrate into the insulation and repels water affecting the insulation from the outside. During the mineral wool manufacturing process, hydrophobic oil, which surrounds each fiber like a protective film, is added. This provides effective protection against moisture penetration across the entire insulation thickness. Hydrophobic treatment does not affect the water vapor diffusion transmission. The effectiveness of the hydrophobic treatment is temporary and depends on the level of moisture. It decreases when exposed to high temperatures. The primary objective of the hydrophobic treatment is to protect the insulation from short bursts of rainfall during installation, for example. In principle, even mineral wool insulation that has been hydrophobically treated must be protected against the ingress of moisture during transport, storage and application.

The water repellency of mineral wool insulation can be tested in accordance with several standards.

EN 1609 & EN 13472 Partial immersion

Tested in accordance with two mineral wool standards, e.g. the EN 1609 standard for boards (slabs) and the DIN EN 13472 standard for pipe insulating products. The maximum permissible water absorption in these testing procedures must not exceed 0.205 lb/ft² (1 kg /m²). ProRox[®] insulation products are hydrophobically treated and therefore fulfill these requirements.



BS 2972 Section 12 Partial Immersion

This part of standard covers the determination of the amount of water absorption by mineral fiber insulation. The test sample is immersed vertically with one 6inch by 1inch side 1/4" (6 mm) below the surface of tap water for 48 hours. After the immersion period the sample must be drained for 5 minutes. The water absorption is calculated using the weight difference before and after testing and is expressed in lb/ft² (kg/m²).



BS 2972 Section 12 Total Immersion

This part of the standard covers the determination of the amount of water absorption by mineral fiber insulation. The test sample is immersed completely in tap water for two hours with the upper surface approximately 1" (25 mm) below the surface of the tap water. After the immersion period, the sample must be drained for 5 minutes. The water absorption is calculated using the weight difference before and after testing and the increase is expressed in lb/ft³ (kg/m³).



NOTE

British Petroleum places specific demands on the water repellency of mineral wool products. In accordance with the BP172 standard, the samples are heated for 24 hours at 480 °F (250 °C). The water repellency is tested afterwards in accordance with BS 2972 Section 12 Partial Immersion.

2.2 Product properties & test methods

2.2.5 Water repellency

ASTM C1104 / 1104M

"Standard Test Method for Determining the Water Vapor Sorption of Unfaced Mineral Fiber Insulation". This standard covers the determination of the amount of water vapor sorbed by mineral fiber insulation exposed to a high-humidity atmosphere. The test samples are first dried in an oven and then transferred to an environmental chamber maintained at 120 °F (49 °C) and 95 % relative humidity for 96 hours. The water vapor sorption is calculated using the weight difference before and after testing and is expressed in weight percentage or volume percentage.



Caution with regard to paint shops

When using hydrophobically treated insulation materials in spraying plants, also ensure that the hydrophobic oil does not have any negative impact – e.g. by means of paint wetting impairment substances such as silicon oils – on the coating process. ProRox® insulation products are hydrophobically treated without silicon oils or silicon resins and therefore also fulfil the guidelines of the automotive industry, such as VW-Test 3.10.7. They may be used in paint shops.

2.2.6 Water vapor transmission

With installations constructed outdoors, the possibility of moisture penetrating the insulation system or being "built in" can never be ruled out. Therefore, it is important that insulation exhibits a high degree of water vapor permeability, which allows the water to

escape from the installation once it has been started up started through diffusion or evaporation processes. This will prevent a negative impact on the insulation properties.

2.2.7 Air flow resistance

The resistance that an insulation material offers against the flow of air is referred to as air flow resistance. It depends on the apparent density, the fiber dimensions, the fiber orientation and the proportion of non-fibrous elements. It determines the level of convection in the insulation and its acoustic-technical properties. ASTM C522 "Standard test method for air flow resistance of acoustic materials" covers the determination of air flow resistivity, which is a material property expressed in terms of mks rayls/m (Pa.s/m²) and describes the relationship between the pressure difference and flow rate in an insulation material of 3 1/3 ft (1 m) thickness.

One of the factors that influences convection in an insulation material is its flow resistance. This is important when insulation materials adjoin air spaces, such as finned walls in boilers, and there are no airtight roofs or intermediate layers (foils).

When such thermal insulation materials are constructed vertically, the longitudinal flow resistance should therefore measure at least 50 kPa s/m² in accordance with EN 29053.

2.2.8 Compression resistance

The resistance that an insulation system offers to external mechanical loads (wind loads, equipment, people, cladding loads) is influenced by factors including the pressure resistance of the insulation. The compressive stress of mineral wool is preferably specified at 10 % compression. The compressive strength is the ratio of the strength under a predetermined compression to the loaded surface of the test sample, as identified during a compression test in accordance with ASTM C165 "Standard Test Method for Measuring Compressive Properties of Thermal Insulation".

2.2.9 Density

The density of mineral wool products is the amount of fibers per cubic foot. Special care should be taken when comparing only the densities of insulation products. Density influences several product performance properties. It is however not a product performance property itself. A common assumption is that the higher the density, the more the compression resistance, maximum service temperature, fire performance and thermal conductivity will improve. This is only correct to a certain extent. A few examples:

Binder content

During the manufacture of mineral wool products, a binder is added to glue/form the fibers into the desired shape. The binder content positively influences the compression strength, but due to its organic compounds has a negative effect on the maximum service temperature and fire resistance.

Thermal conductivity

For high temperatures it is often better to use high density (less radiation) mineral wool insulation. At temperatures below 300 °F (150 °C), the conduction throughout the fibers will be more dominant, so using a lower density product is preferable.

Fiber structure

The (vertical, horizontal,..) orientation of the fibers influences the longitudinal air flow resistance, compressive strength, and thermal conductivity. Generally, the more "vertical" fibers, the better the compressive strength and the higher the thermal conductivity will be.

Non-fibrous particles

Non-fibrous particles or shot content in mineral wool products have a negative influence on the thermal conductivity and fire resistance. For example, a mineral wool product with a density of 6.2 lb/ft³ (100 kg/m³) and 15 % shot content, ((tested in accordance with ASTM C 612 on a meshed netting (150 mm, 100 mesh)), would have the same thermal conductivity as a mineral wool product with a density of 8.7 lb/ft³ (140 kg/m³) and 40 % shot content. ProRox® insulation are high quality, high performing products that exceed ASTM C612 stone wool requirements. ASTM C612-14

states that shot should not exceed 25% and allowable shot content has been reduced over time in version revisions. The less shot in insulation the greater the Nominal density. It is important to determine if specified density is referring to nominal or actual when reviewing insulation specifications. ProRox® products achieve excellent thermal conductivity and fire resistance performance, even at low densities.

Density: Nominal vs Actual

Density as per ASTM C168 is defined as "the mass per unit volume of material". Density is not a performance criteria but is commonly referred to when specifying insulation. Density is sometimes specified as Actual or Nominal. Actual density (sometimes referred to as Delivered density) is the true density of the insulation and Nominal Density is the effective density of the insulation relative to a historic benchmark where the insulation contained 40% non-fibrous content also known as shot (ASTM C612-99).

Insulation selection

Every mineral wool insulation product has specific characteristics. Insulation should therefore be based on the actual product performance, not on the density.

A simple way to relate

Nominal density relates to actual density in the same way equivalent wattage of a fluorescent light bulb relates to an incandescent light bulb. E.g. A fluorescent light bulb with 13 watts (actual) performs the same as 100w incandescent.

2. Theory

2.3 Bases for thermal calculations

The following sections outline a number of definitions and approaches to heat transfer calculations.

Detailed calculation processes are outlined in the ASTM C680 and VDI 2055, and the EN 12241 standards, as well as in various standards, such as ASTM C680 and BS 5970. The calculation bases are similar in all the standards. In Europe, the VDI 2055 is the most widely used and accepted definitions and calculation basis. In North America ASTM standards C168 and C680, as well as ASHRAE methods, are the most widely used.

The calculation of multiple-layer insulation constructions is to some extent quite complex, as iterative calculation processes need to be carried out. The procedures outlined in the following sections are only suitable to obtain an approximate calculation of insulation constructions. The thermo-technical engineering program "Rockassist" can be used for detailed calculations. Another tool available is NAIMA's "3E Plus® Insulation Thickness Computer Program".

For technical assistance and the most up-to-date data for heat transfer and thermal modelling contact the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team.

2.3.1 Heat Transfer – ASTM C168 and C680 (North American basis and terms)

During heat transfer, thermal energy is transported as a result of a temperature difference. Heat transfer occurs through conduction, convection or radiation.

- Thermal **conduction** is the transport of heat from one molecule to another, as a result of a difference in temperature. In solid substances, the average distances between individual molecules remain the same, but in liquids and gases it increases with temperature.
- Thermal **convection** is the transport of heat in liquids and gases through flow processes. A distinction is drawn between free convection (natural convection), in which the movement occurs as a result of variations in density, and forced

convection where the flow is generated by external forces such as wind or blowers.

- Thermal **radiation** is the transfer of heat by electromagnetic radiation to and from exposed surfaces separated by radiation permeable media, such as air.

Terms

Heat (Energy)

Heat is the quantity of thermal energy that is supplied to or dissipates from a body. The unit of heat is BTU (Joule).

Heat flow rate, Q

The heat flow rate, Q, is the quantity of heat transferred to or from a system in unit time. The unit of heat flow is BTU/hr (Watt).

Heat flux, q

Heat flux, q, is the heat flow rate through a surface of unit area perpendicular to the direction of heat flow. The units are expressed in BTU/hr.ft² (W/m²) for surfaces or BTU/hr.ft (W/m) for pipes (referring to the surface of the insulation).

Mean Specific Heat

The quantity of heat required to change the temperature of a unit mass of a substance one degree. The units are expressed as BTU/lb.°F (J/kg.K).

Thermal Capacity (heat capacity)

The quantity of heat required to change the temperature of the body one degree. The unit of heat capacity is BTU/°F (J/K).

Conductivity

Thermal conductivity is a material property defining heat flow through a homogeneous material, "λ" (or "k"). It indicates the heat flow rate "Q" through unit area of material "A" induced by unit temperature gradient " $\Delta T / L$ " in a direction perpendicular to that unit area (Heat-Flux per unit temperature difference across a unit thickness of material).

The unit of thermal conductivity is BTU.in/hr.ft².°F (W/m.K).

$$\lambda = \frac{(Q/t)}{A \cdot (\Delta T/L)}$$

Apparent Thermal Conductivity

A thermal conductivity assigned to a material that exhibits thermal transmission by several modes of heat transfer resulting in property variation with specimen thickness, or surface emittance. Thermal conductivity and resistivity are normally considered intrinsic or specific properties of materials and, as such, should be independent of thickness. When nonconductive modes of heat transfer are present within the specimen (radiation, free convection) this may not be the case. To indicate the possible presence of this phenomena the modifier "apparent" is used, as in apparent thermal conductivity.

Conductance, C

The conductive heat transfer coefficient, C, (thermal conductance) is the thermal conductivity of a system or a particular thickness under consideration; it is not a material property. Thermal conductance is the heat flow rate per unit area per unit temperature difference across a system or piece of material - the thickness to which the conductance is assigned must be defined. The unit of thermal conductance is BTU/hr.ft².°F (W/m²K)

$$C = \frac{\text{Thermal Conductivity}}{\text{Applied Insulation Thickness}} = \frac{\lambda}{L}$$

Note: Within the ASTM standards and ASHRAE handbooks the term "Conductance" is used both in the strict sense (as defined above in relation to heat transfer by conduction) and in a more general loose sense to refer to the heat transfer coefficient by any, or all, of conduction, convection and radiation (in isolation or combination).

Resistivity

The quantity determined by the temperature difference, at steady state, between two defined parallel surfaces of a homogeneous material of unit

thickness that induces a unit heat flow rate through a unit area. Thermal resistivity is the reciprocal of thermal conductivity. Where a material exhibits thermal transmission by several modes of heat transfer the term "apparent thermal resistivity" is applied. The units of thermal resistivity are hr.ft.°F/BTU or hr.ft².°F/BTU-in (mK/W).

Thermal Diffusivity

The ratio of thermal conductivity of a substance to the product of its density and specific heat. The unit of thermal diffusivity is:

$$\frac{(BTU/(hr \cdot ft \cdot F))}{(lb/ft^3) \cdot (BTU/lb \cdot F)} = \frac{ft^2}{hr} = (m^2/s)$$

Heat Transfer Coefficient, u

The proportionality coefficient defining general heat flow in unit time through unit area induced by unit temperature difference between the environments on each side. Heat transfer coefficients can be defined for heat transfer taking place by the mechanisms of conduction, convection or radiation (individually or combined).

Note: with the ASTM standards and ASHRAE handbooks the term "conductance", as defined in the strict sense, applies to the conductive heat transfer coefficient, C, but the term "conductance" is also loosely applied to the heat transfer coefficient of any layer with heat transfer by any, or all, of conduction, convection and radiation. When used in this general sense the symbol u_n is used, where the subscript, n, references the particular layer (or layers) under consideration.

Overall Coefficient of heat transfer (U-Factor or Thermal Transmittance), U

The proportionality coefficient defining heat transmission in unit time through unit area of a material or construction and the boundary films, induced by unit temperature difference between the environments on each side. Units are BTU/hr.ft².°F (W/m² K).

2.3 Bases for thermal calculations

2.3.1 Heat Transfer – ASTM C168 and C680 (North American basis and terms)

Surface Coefficient

Surface Coefficient (surface transfer conductance) is the ratio of the steady-state heat exchange rate (time rate of heat flow per unit area of a particular surface by the combined effects of radiation, conduction and convection) between a surface and its external surroundings (air or other fluid and other visible surface) to the temperature difference between the surfaces and its surroundings. The surface coefficient includes the combined effects of radiant, convective and conductive heat transfer, it is defined by:

$$h = h_r + h_c$$

where h_r is the component due to radiation (Radiant Heat Transfer Conductance) and h_c is the component due to convection and conduction (Convective Heat Transfer Conductance). Units are BTU/hr.ft².°F (W/m² K).

Radiant Heat Transfer Conductance

The radiant component of surface transfer conductance, defined by:

$$h_r = \frac{\sigma \epsilon [T_s^4 - T_o^4]}{T_s - T_o}$$

Convective Heat Transfer Conductance (Film Conductance)

The time rate of heat flow from a unit area of a surface to its surroundings, induced by a unit temperature difference between the surface and the environment where the environment is a fluid (liquid or gases). Convective heat transfer conductance is the convective (and conductive) component of surface transfer conductance, h_c ; it does not include radiative component. Film conductance depends on the nature of fluid motion past the surface (laminar or turbulent). Units are BTU/hr.ft².°F (W/m² K).

In general, indoor or outdoor heat transfer coefficient (or surface film coefficient) are denoted by h_i and h_o respectively for the interior and exterior surface.

Emittance, ϵ

The ratio of the radiant flux emitted by a specimen to that emitted by a black body at the same temperature under the same conditions.

Resistance, R

The thermal resistance, R, is the reciprocal of the thermal conductance. The units of thermal resistance are °F.ft².hr/BTU (m²K/W).

$$R = \frac{1}{C}$$

Overall resistance to thermal transfer is sum of the thermal resistance of individual layers, it is the reciprocal of the overall heat transfer coefficient, U.

$$R_{total} = \frac{1}{U} = \frac{\text{Heat Transfer}}{\text{Resistance}_{inside}} + \frac{\text{Heat Transfer}}{\text{Resistance}_{material}} + \frac{\text{Heat Transfer}}{\text{Resistance}_{outside}}$$

$$R_{total} = R_i + R_1 + R_2 + \dots + R_n + R_o$$

$$\frac{1}{U} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{U_i} + \frac{1}{U_1} + \frac{1}{U_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{U_n} + \frac{1}{U_o}}$$

2.3.2 Heat transfer (European basis and terms)

Terms

Heat quantity Q

The heat quantity is the thermal energy that is supplied to or dissipates from a body. The unit used to designate the heat quantity is J.

Heat flow Q̇

The heat flow Q̇ is the heat quantity flowing in a body or being transferred between two bodies per time unit. The unit used to designate the heat flow is W (1W = 1J/s).

Heat flow density q

The heat flow density q is the heat flow being applied to the unit of the surface that the heat is flowing through. The unit is expressed in W/m² for surfaces or in W/m for pipes, for example. In the field of insulation technology, the heat flow density refers to the surface of the insulation system.

Thermal conductivity λ

The heat-insulating effect of insulation materials is described in terms of the thermal conductivity λ. λ is specified in the physical unit of W/(m·K). It indicates the quantity of heat "Q" that, in "t" amount of time and at a temperature difference of "ΔT", flows across the thickness "s" through the surface.

$$\lambda = \frac{Q \cdot l}{A \cdot t \cdot \Delta T} = \frac{J \cdot m}{m^2 \cdot s \cdot K} = \frac{J}{m \cdot s \cdot K} = \left[\frac{W}{m \cdot K} \right]$$

The unit of the thermal conductivity is expressed in terms of J/(m s K) or W/(m·K).

Thermal conductance Λ

The coefficient of thermal conductance "Λ" indicates, for a given layer, the heat flow density flowing vertically between the surfaces over an area of 1 m² at a temperature difference of 1 K. The unit used to express the coefficients of thermal conductance is W/(m²·K).

$$\Lambda = \frac{\text{Thermal conductivity}}{\text{Applied insulation thickness}} = \frac{\lambda}{s} \quad \left[\frac{W}{(m^2 \cdot K)} \right]$$

Thermal resistance R

The thermal resistance "R" is the reciprocal of the coefficients of thermal conductance. The unit used to express the thermal resistance is (m²·K)/W.

$$R = \frac{\text{Applied insulation thickness}}{\text{Thermal conductivity}} = \frac{s}{\lambda} \left[\frac{(m^2 \cdot K)}{W} \right] \quad \text{for walls}$$

$$R_{\text{Pipe}} = \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_a}{d_i}\right)}{2 \cdot \pi \cdot \lambda} \left[\frac{(m \cdot K)}{W} \right] \quad \text{for pipe insulation}$$

Surface coefficient of heat transfer α

The surface coefficient of heat transfer "α" gives the heat flow density circulating at the surface of a body in a medium or vice versa, when the temperature difference between the body and the liquid or gaseous medium amounts to 1 K. The unit used to express surface coefficients of heat transfer is W/(m²·K).

2.3 Bases for thermal calculations

2.3.2 Heat transfer (European basis and terms)

Heat transfer resistance $1/\alpha$

The heat transfer resistance " $1/\alpha$ " is the reciprocal of the surface coefficients of heat transfer. The unit used to express the heat transfer resistance is $(\text{m}^2\text{K})/\text{W}$.

Coefficient of thermal transmittance k

The coefficient of thermal transmittance " k " indicates the heat flow density " q " circulating through a body, when there is a temperature difference of 1 K between the two media, which are separated by the body. The coefficient of thermal transmittance includes the thermal resistance and heat transfer components. The unit used to express coefficients of thermal transmittance is $\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \text{K})$.

Thermal transmission resistance $1/k$

The thermal transmission resistance is the reciprocal of the coefficients of thermal transmittance. The unit used to express thermal transmission resistance is $(\text{m}^2\text{K})/\text{W}$.

$$\frac{1}{k} = \text{Heat transfer resistance}_{\text{inside}} + \text{Heat transfer resistance}_{\text{inside}} + \text{Heat transfer resistance}_{\text{outside}}$$

$$\frac{1}{k_w} = \frac{1}{\alpha_i} + R_w + \frac{1}{\alpha_a} \quad \left[\frac{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}{\text{W}} \right] \quad \text{for a wall}$$

$$\frac{1}{k_R} = \frac{1}{d_i \cdot \pi \cdot \alpha_i} + R_R + \frac{1}{d_a \cdot \pi \cdot \alpha_a} \quad \left[\frac{\text{m} \cdot \text{K}}{\text{W}} \right]$$

for pipe insulation

Calculation bases

The heat flow density through a flat wall constructed of multiple layers is calculated as follows:

$$q = k \cdot (\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L)$$

$$\frac{1}{k} = \frac{1}{\alpha_i} + \frac{s_1}{\lambda_1} + \frac{s_2}{\lambda_2} + \dots + \frac{s_n}{\lambda_n} + \frac{1}{\alpha_a}$$

$$q = \frac{(\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L)}{\frac{1}{\alpha_i} + \frac{s_1}{\lambda_1} + \frac{s_2}{\lambda_2} + \dots + \frac{s_n}{\lambda_n} + \frac{1}{\alpha_a}} \quad \left[\frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2} \right]$$

The following symbols are used in this calculation:

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| q | Heat flow density | W/m^2 |
| ϑ_M | Temperature of the medium in | $^{\circ}\text{C}$ |
| ϑ_L | Ambient temperature in | $^{\circ}\text{C}$ |
| α_i | Surface coefficient of heat transfer inside | $\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \text{K})$ |
| α_a | Surface coefficient of heat transfer outside | $\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \text{K})$ |
| $s_1 \dots s_n$ | Thickness of the individual layers of insulation | m |
| $\lambda_1 \dots \lambda_n$ | Thermal conductivity of the individual insulation layers | $\text{W}/(\text{m K})$ |
| k | Coefficient of thermal transmittance | $\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \text{K})$ |

With multiple-layer hollow cylinder (pipe insulation), the heat flow density is calculated as follows:

$$q_R = k_R \cdot (\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L)$$

$$\frac{1}{k_R} = \frac{1}{d_i \cdot \pi \cdot \alpha_i} + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_2}{d_1}\right)}{2 \cdot \pi \cdot \lambda_1} + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_3}{d_2}\right)}{2 \cdot \pi \cdot \lambda_2} + \dots + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_n}{d_{n-1}}\right)}{2 \cdot \pi \cdot \lambda_n} + \frac{1}{d_a \cdot \pi \cdot \alpha_a} \quad \left[\frac{\text{m} \cdot \text{K}}{\text{W}} \right]$$

$$q_R = \frac{\pi \cdot (\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L)}{\frac{1}{d_i \cdot \alpha_i} + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_2}{d_1}\right)}{2 \cdot \lambda_1} + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_3}{d_2}\right)}{2 \cdot \lambda_2} + \dots + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_n}{d_{n-1}}\right)}{2 \cdot \lambda_n} + \frac{1}{d_a \cdot \alpha_a}} \quad \left[\frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}} \right]$$

The following symbols are used in this calculation:

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--|----------------------|
| q_R | Heat flow density per m pipe | W/m |
| ϑ_M | Temperature of the medium in | °C |
| ϑ_L | Ambient temperature in | °C |
| d_1 | External diameter of pipe | m |
| d_a | External diameter of insulated pipe | m |
| α_i | Surface coefficient of heat transfer inside | W/(m ² K) |
| α_a | Surface coefficient of heat transfer outside | W/(m ² K) |
| $\lambda_1 \dots \lambda_n$ | Thermal conductivity of the individual insulation layers | W/(m K) |
| k | Coefficient of thermal transmittance | W/(m ² K) |
| $d_1 \dots d_n$ | Diameter of individual layers of insulation | m |

HINT

When performing thermo-technical calculations in insulation technology, the internal heat transfer does not generally need to be considered. This simplification is based on the assumption that the medium is the same temperature as the interior of the pipe. The following terms may therefore be omitted from the calculations shown above:

$\frac{1}{\alpha_i}$ remove from the denominator in the equation for the wall

$\frac{1}{d_i \cdot \alpha_i}$ remove from the denominator in the equation for pipe insulation

The surface temperatures ϑ_0 can be calculated as follows:

$$\vartheta_0 = \frac{k_W}{\alpha_a} \cdot (\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L) + \vartheta_L \text{ °C for walls}$$

$$\vartheta_0 = \frac{(\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L)}{\alpha_a \cdot \left(\frac{1}{\alpha_i} + \frac{s_1}{\lambda_1} + \frac{s_2}{\lambda_2} + \dots + \frac{s_n}{\lambda_n} + \frac{1}{\alpha_a} \right)} + \vartheta_L \text{ °C}$$

$$\vartheta_0 = \frac{k_R}{\pi \cdot d_a \cdot \alpha_a} \cdot (\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L) + \vartheta_L \text{ °C for pipe insulation products}$$

$$\vartheta_0 = \frac{(\vartheta_M - \vartheta_L)}{d_a \cdot \alpha_a \cdot \left(\frac{1}{d_i \cdot \alpha_i} + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_2}{d_1}\right)}{2 \cdot \lambda_1} + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_3}{d_2}\right)}{2 \cdot \lambda_2} + \dots + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{d_n}{d_{n-1}}\right)}{2 \cdot \lambda_n} + \frac{1}{d_a \cdot \alpha_a} \right)} + \vartheta_L \text{ °C}$$

HINT

The internal heat transfer can once again be disregarded (see hint in previous column).

The characteristic of emitting heat from a surface (e.g. the external sheet cladding) into the surrounding medium, which is usually air, is described by means of the external surface coefficient of heat transfer " α_a ". The surface coefficient of heat transfer is made up of the rate of convection and radiation.

$$\alpha_a = \alpha_k + \alpha_r$$

The following symbols used in this calculation:

α_k the rate of convection

α_r the rate of radiation

The rate of convection consists only of free convection (air movement due solely to variations in density as a result of temperature), forced convection (blowers, wind) or of a mixture of free and forced convection. The convection also depends on the geometry of the building component.

2.3 Bases for thermal calculations

2.3.2 Heat transfer (European basis and terms)

The rate of radiation depends on factors such as the material of the cladding (emission ratio ϵ), the surface temperature and the orientation of the object in relation to other components.

The calculation procedures are explained in the VDI 2055 and DIN EN 12241 standards. A detailed description will not be given at this point.

Use the following procedure to obtain an approximate estimate of the external surface coefficients of heat transfer α_a . It applies in respect of the following boundary conditions:

■ Applicable only for free convection

■ $\Delta\vartheta = \vartheta_0 - \vartheta_L \leq 60\text{K}$

■ $\vartheta_m = 0,5 \cdot (\vartheta_0 + \vartheta_L) \approx 40\text{ }^\circ\text{C}$

■ $d_a \approx 0,5\text{m}$

The following applies for horizontal pipes:

$$\alpha_a = A + 0,05 \cdot \Delta\vartheta \quad \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}$$

The following applies for vertical pipes and walls:

$$\alpha_a = B + 0,09 \cdot \Delta\vartheta \quad \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}}$$

ϑ_0 is the surface temperature of the cladding

ϑ_L is the ambient temperature

The values for A and B have been compiled for a number of materials and surfaces in the table shown below.

| Surface | A | B |
|-----------------------------|-----|-----|
| Aluminum, rolled | 2,5 | 2,7 |
| Aluminum, oxidized | 3,1 | 3,3 |
| Galvanized sheet, bright | 4,0 | 4,2 |
| Galvanized sheet, tarnished | 5,3 | 5,5 |
| Austenitic steel | 3,2 | 3,4 |
| Alu-Zinc – sheet | 3,4 | 3,6 |
| Non-metallic surface | 8,5 | 8,7 |

Supplementary values $\Delta\lambda$ Thermal bridges

In addition to the insulation thickness, the total heat loss from insulated objects depends on thermal bridges, which have a negative impact on the insulation system. A distinction is drawn between thermal bridges caused by the insulation and thermal bridges caused by the installation. Thermal bridges caused by the insulation system include support constructions and spacers, whereas thermal bridges caused by the installation include pipe hangings and supports, flanges and brackets.

Allowances are made for these thermal bridges in the form of supplementary factors that are multiplied by the surface coefficients of heat transfer.

Table 3 of the VDI 2055 includes relevant supplementary values for thermal bridges caused by the insulation.

Rockassist: The thermo-technical engineering calculation program "Rockassist" can be used to calculate heat losses from objects whilst allowing for thermal bridges. Please contact the ROCKWOOL Technical Services Team for assistance.



Rockassist is smartphone and tablet friendly

3

Tables

ProRox

Industrial
Insulation



3. Tables

Table of contents

| | | |
|------------|---|------------|
| 3.1 | Units, conversion factors and tables | 130 |
| 3.1.1a | Symbols, definitions and units (US Convention) | 130 |
| 3.1.1b | Symbols, definitions and units (European Convention) | 132 |
| 3.1.2 | Mathematical symbols | 133 |
| 3.1.3 | SI pre-fixes | 134 |
| 3.1.4 | Greek alphabet | 134 |
| 3.1.5 | SI units | 135 |
| 3.1.6 | SI derived units with special names | 135 |
| | a) European units | 136 |
| | b) US units | 137 |
| 3.1.7 | Compound units derived from SI-units | 138 |
| 3.1.8 | Temperature scales and conversions | 139 |
| 3.1.9 | Conversion degrees Celcius and Fahrenheit | 139 |
| 3.1.10 | Imperial (Anglo-Saxon) units | 140 |
| 3.1.11 | Conversion of energy and heat scales | 143 |
| 3.1.12 | Conversion power scales | 143 |
| 3.1.13 | Conversion of pressure scales | 144 |
| 3.1.14 | Conversion of SI-units into Imperial units, pre-SI units and technical scales | 144 |
| 3.1.15 | Density conversion table | 145 |
| 3.2 | Product properties insulation and cladding materials | 146 |
| 3.2.1 | Insulation materials | 146 |
| 3.2.2 | Cladding materials | 146 |
| 3.3 | Usage tables | 149 |
| 3.3.1 | Construction materials | 149 |
| 3.3.2 | Fluids which are commonly used in process industry | 149 |
| 3.3.3 | Gases which are commonly used in process industry | 150 |
| 3.3.4 | Conversion factors in relation to the heat of combustion | 151 |
| 3.3.5 | Specific enthalpy super heated steam in kJ/kg | 152 |
| 3.3.6 | Density super heated steam kg/m ³ | 153 |
| 3.3.7 | Dew point table | 154 |
| 3.3.8 | Climate data | 155 |
| 3.3.9 | Guidelines average velocities in pipe work | 162 |
| 3.3.10 | Pipe diameter | 162 |
| 3.3.11 | Equivalent pipe length for flanges & valves | 164 |
| 3.3.12 | Minimum radius ProRox® boards (slabs) | 165 |
| 3.3.13 | Fire curve: ISO and hydrocarbon | 166 |

3. Tables

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.1a Symbols, definitions and units (US Convention)

| Symbol | Definition | US Unit | Notes |
|-------------------------|--|---|-------------------------|
| A | Area | ft ² | |
| L | Length | ft, in | |
| σ | Stefan-Boltzman Constant 0.1714 x 10 ⁻⁸ | BTU/hr.ft ² .°R ⁴ | |
| ϵ | Emittance | - | |
| - | Specific heat capacity | BTU/lb.°F | |
| c_p | Specific heat capacity at constant pressure | BTU/lb.°F | |
| c_v | specific heat capacity at constant volume | BTU/lb.°F | |
| - | thermal diffusivity | ft ² /hr | |
| - | thermal capacity | BTU/°F | |
| u | Heat transfer coefficient (general) | BTU/hr.ft ² .°F | linear orientation |
| | | BTU/hr.ft ² .°F | cylindrical orientation |
| | | BTU/hr.°F | spherical orientation |
| U | Overall Heat Transfer Coefficient (Thermal Transmittance) | BTU/hr.ft ² .°F | Flat Wall |
| h_c | Film conductance (convective heat transfer coefficient) (convective heat transfer conductance) | BTU/hr.ft ² .°F | Flat Wall |
| | | BTU/hr.ft.°F | Pipe |
| | | BTU/hr.°F | sphere |
| h_r | Radiant heat transfer conductance | BTU/hr.ft ² .°F | Flat Wall |
| | | BTU/hr.ft.°F | Pipe |
| | | BTU/hr.°F | sphere |
| h | Surface coefficient of heat transfer (surface transfer conductance) | BTU/hr.ft ² .°F | Flat Wall |
| | | BTU/hr.ft.°F | Pipe |
| | | BTU/hr.°F | sphere |
| C | Conductance | BTU/hr.ft. ² .°F | |
| k (or λ) | Thermal conductivity | BTU-in/hr.ft ² .°F | (conventional unit) |
| | | BTU/hr.ft.°F | (alternative) |
| k_a (or λ_a) | Apparent thermal conductivity | BTU-in/hr.ft ² .°F | |



| Symbol | Definition | US Unit | Notes |
|----------------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| R | Thermal resistance | hr.ft ² .°F/BTU | linear orientation |
| | | hr.ft.°F/BTU | cylindrical orientation |
| | | hr.°F/BTU | spherical orientation |
| r | Thermal resistivity | hr.ft ² .°F/BTU-in | (conventional unit) |
| | | hr.ft.°F/BTU | (alternative) |
| r _a | Apparent thermal resistivity | hr.ft ² .°F/BTU-in | |
| - | Heat Energy | BTU | |
| Q | Heat Flow Rate | BTU/hr | |
| q | Heat Flux | BTU/hr.ft ² | |
| T | Temperature | °R or °F | |
| T _s | Absolute Surface Temperature (Rankine) | °R | |
| T _o | Absolute surroundings temperature (Rankine) | °R | |
| i | inner boundary layer | - | subscript |
| o | outer boundary layer | - | subscript |
| s | surface | - | subscript |
| 1 ... n | internal layer | - | subscript |

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.1b Symbols, definitions and units (European Convention)

| Symbol | Definition | Unit |
|-----------------|--|--|
| A | Area | m ² |
| b | Length | m |
| C ₁₂ | Radiation coefficient | W/(m ² · K ⁴) |
| c | Specific heat capacity | J/(kg · K) |
| c _p | Specific heat capacity at constant pressure | J/(kg · K) |
| d | Diameter | m |
| f | Correction factor | - |
| H | Height | m |
| h | Enthalpy | J/kg |
| k | Heat transfer coefficient | W/(m ² · K), W/K, W/(m · K) |
| k' | Total heat transfer coefficient | W/(m ² · K), W/K, W/(m · K) |
| l | Length | m |
| m | Mass | kg |
| \dot{m} | Massflow | kg/s, kg/h |
| n | Operation time | a |
| P | Pressure | Pa |
| Q | Heat energy | J |
| \dot{Q} | Heat flow | W |
| q | Heat flow density | W/m ² or W/m |
| R | Thermal resistance | m ² · K/W, m · K/W, K/W |
| R | Specific heat capacity | J/(kg · K) |
| s | Insulation thickness | m |
| t | Time | h or s |
| T | Temperature (Kelvin) | K |
| U | Circumference | m |
| w | Wind speed | m/s |
| α | Total heat transfer coefficient (incl. cold bridges) | W/(m ² · K) |

| Symbol | Definition | Unit |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| α | Linear expansion coefficient | K^{-1} |
| Λ | Thermal conductance | $W/(m^2 \cdot K)$ |
| λ | Thermal conductivity | $W/(m \cdot K)$ |
| ε | Emissivity | - |
| η | Yield, efficiency | - |
| ϑ (also t) | Temperature | $^{\circ}C$ |
| μ | Water vapor resistance factor | - |
| μ | Water vapor resistance | - |
| ρ | Density | kg/m^3 |
| φ | Relative humidity | - |
| Ξ | Air flow resistance | $Pa \cdot s/m^2$ |

3.1.2 Mathematical symbols

| Mathematical symbols | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| = | equal to |
| < | less than |
| \leq | less than or equal to |
| \ll | much less than |
| + | plus |
| ∞ | infinity |
| π | $\pi \approx 3.14159$ |
| \approx | approximately |
| > | greater than |
| \geq | equal to or greater than |
| \gg | much greater than |
| Δ | Difference |
| Σ | Sum |
| ln | Logarithm base e |
| log | Logarithm base 10 |

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.3 SI pre-fixes

Decimal parts and multiples of units are conveyed by means of prefixes and corresponding symbols. Several prefixes cannot be compounded.

| Name | Symbol | Conversion factor |
|-------|--------|-------------------|
| Atto | A | 10^{-18} |
| Femto | F | 10^{-15} |
| Piko | P | 10^{-12} |
| Nano | n | 10^{-9} |
| Mikro | μ | 10^{-6} |
| Milli | m | 10^{-3} |
| Centi | c | 10^{-2} |
| Deci | d | 10^{-1} |
| Deca | da | 10^1 |
| Hecto | h | 10^2 |
| Kilo | k | 10^3 |
| Mega | M | 10^6 |
| Giga | G | 10^9 |
| Tera | T | 10^{12} |
| Peta | P | 10^{15} |
| Exa | E | 10^{18} |

3.1.4 Greek alphabet

| Greek alphabet | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|---------|---------------------|--------|-------------------|---------|-------------------|---------|
| A α | Alpha | H η | Eta | N ν | Nu | T τ | Tau |
| B β | Beta | Θ θ | Theta | Ξ ξ | Xi | Y υ | Ypsilon |
| Γ γ | Gamma | I ι | Iota | O \omicron | Omicron | Φ ϕ | Phi |
| Δ δ | Delta | K κ | Kappa | Π π | Pi | X χ | Chi |
| E ϵ | Epsilon | Λ λ | Lambda | P ρ | Rho | Ψ ψ | Psi |
| Z ζ | Zeta | M μ | Mu | Σ σ | Sigma | Ω ω | Omega |

3.1.5 SI units

The International System of Units, also referred to as SI (Abbreviation for French: *Système International d'unités*), embodies the modern metric system and is the most widely used units system for physical units. The system was originally established in response to demands from the field of science and research, however it is now the prevalent units system for the economic, technological and trade industries. In the European Union (EU) and the majority of other states, the use of the SI units system in official and business transactions is prescribed by law; however there are many national exceptions to this rule.

SI Base units

The SI units system is composed of seven base units. In order to use the base units for applications involving different scales, certain prefixes such as Kilo or Milli are used. These are also used in conjunction with derived units and, to some extent, with units from other systems.

| Basic unit | Dimension Symbol | Quantity (metric) | Unit (metric) | Quantity (US) | Unit (US) |
|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| Length | L | Meter | m | Feet | ft |
| Mass | m | Kilogram | kg | Pound | lb |
| Time | t | Second | s | Second | s |
| Electric current | I | Ampere | A | Ampere | A |
| Thermodynamic temperature | T | Kelvin | K | Rankine | R |
| Amount of substance | N | Mol | mol | Mol | mol |
| Luminous intensity | J | Candela | cd | Candela | cd |

3.1.6 SI derived units with special names

In addition to the base units, the International System of Units also includes derived units, which are made up of one or more of these base units by means of multiplication or division. The clearly defined product of powers of the base units are not referred to as a dimension of the physical size as such, but rather the system is formally structured in that way. It is possible for example to express areas in terms of meters square (m^2) or speeds in meters per second (m/s).

Some of these compounded units are assigned names and symbols, which can even be combined once again with all of the base units and derived units. The SI unit "force" for example, the Newton ($1\text{ N} = 1\text{ kg m/s}^2$), lends itself to express the unit "energy", the Joule ($1\text{ J} = 1\text{ kg m}^2/\text{s}^2$), which is equal to the equation Newtons multiplied by meters. The following 22 derived units have their own name and unit symbol.

Notable US units are given in an additional table.

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.6a SI derived units with special names (European units)

| Name | Symbol | Quantity | Unit | Expression in terms of original SI Units |
|--|------------------------|-----------------|------------------|--|
| Plain angle | α, β, \dots | Radian | rad | $\frac{\text{m}}{\text{m}} \left(= \frac{360^\circ}{2\pi} \right)$ |
| Solid angle | ω | Steradian | sr | $\frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{m}^2}$ |
| Frequency | f | Hertz | Hz | $\frac{1}{\text{s}}$ |
| Force, weight | F | Newton | N | $\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}}{\text{s}^2}$ |
| Pressure, stress | p | Pascal | Pa | $\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}^2 \cdot \text{m}} = \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}$ |
| Energy, work, heat | E, W | Joule | J | $\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{s}^2} = \text{W} \cdot \text{s} = \text{N} \cdot \text{m}$ |
| Power, radiant flux | P | Watt | W | $\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{s}^3} = \text{N} \cdot \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}} = \frac{\text{J}}{\text{s}} = \text{V} \cdot \text{A}$ |
| Voltage, electrical potential difference | U | Volt | V | $\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{s}^3 \cdot \text{A}} = \frac{\text{W}}{\text{A}} = \frac{\text{J}}{\text{C}}$ |
| Electric charge or electric flux | Q | Coulomb | C | $\text{A} \cdot \text{s}$ |
| Magnetic flux | ϕ | Weber | Wb | $\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{s}^2 \cdot \text{A}} = \text{V} \cdot \text{s}$ |
| Electrical resistance | R | Ohm | Ω | $\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{s}^3 \cdot \text{A}^2} = \frac{\text{V}}{\text{A}}$ |
| Electrical conductance | G | Siemens | S | $\frac{\text{s}^3 \cdot \text{A}^2}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2} = \frac{1}{\Omega}$ |
| Inductance | L | Henry | H | $\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{s}^2 \cdot \text{A}^2} = \frac{\text{Wb}}{\text{A}}$ |
| Electrical capacitance | C | Farad | F | $\frac{\text{A}^2 \cdot \text{s}^4}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2} = \frac{\text{C}}{\text{V}}$ |
| Magnetic field | B | Tesla | T | $\frac{\text{kg}}{\text{s}^2 \cdot \text{A}} = \frac{\text{Wb}}{\text{m}^2}$ |
| Celsius-temperature | ϑ (or t) | degrees Celsius | $^\circ\text{C}$ | $0^\circ\text{C} = 273,15 \text{ K}$ $1^\circ\text{C} = 274,15 \text{ K}$ |
| Luminous flux | ϕ_v | Lumen | lm | $\text{cd} \cdot \text{sr}$ |
| Illuminance | E_v | Lux | lx | $\frac{\text{cd} \cdot \text{sr}}{\text{m}^2} = \frac{\text{lm}}{\text{m}^2}$ |
| Radioactivity (decays per unit time) | A | Becquerel | Bq | $\frac{1}{\text{s}}$ |
| Absorbed dose (of ionizing radiation) | D | Gray | Gy | $\frac{\text{J}}{\text{kg}}$ |
| Equivalent dose (of ionizing radiation) | H | Sievert | Sv | $\frac{\text{J}}{\text{kg}}$ |
| Catalytic activity | z | Katal | kat | $\frac{\text{mol}}{\text{s}}$ |

3.1.6b SI derived units with special names (US units)

| Name | Symbol | Quantity (US) | Unit | Expression in terms of original Units |
|---------------------|--------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Force, weight | F | Pound-Force | lb _f | $\frac{\text{lb} \cdot \text{in}}{\text{s}^2}$ |
| Pressure, stress | p | Pound-Force per square inch | PSI | $\frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in} \cdot \text{s}^2}$ |
| Energy, work, heat | E, W | British-Thermal-Unit | BTU | $\frac{\text{lb} \cdot \text{in}^2}{\text{s}^2}$ |
| Celsius-temperature | z | degrees Fahrenheit | °F | $\frac{0 \text{ } ^\circ\text{F} = 459.67 \text{ } ^\circ\text{R}}{32 \text{ } ^\circ\text{F} = 491.67 \text{ } ^\circ\text{R}}$ |

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.7 Compound units derived from SI-units

| Name | Quantity | Symbol | Definition (Units) |
|----------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Volume | Litre | l, L | 1 l = 1 dm ³ = 1 L |
| Time | Minute Hour Day Year | min h d yr | 1 min = 60 s 1 h = 60 min = 3600 s 1 d = 24 h = 1440 min 1 yr = 365 d = 8760 h |
| Mass | Tonnes Grams | t g | 1 t = 1.000 kg 1 g = 0.001 kg |
| Pressure | Bar | bar | 1 bar = 10 ⁵ Pa = 10 ⁵ N/m ² |

US Customary Units

| | | | |
|-----------------|---|---|---|
| Volume (liquid) | Pint Quart Gallon Barrel (oil barrel) | pt qt gal bbl bbl | 1 pint = 2 cups 1 quart = 2 pints 1 gallon = 4 quarts 1 barrel = 31.5 gallons 1 oil barrel = 42 gallons |
| Volume | cubic inch cubic foot cubic yard | in ³ ft ³ yd ³ | 1ft ³ = 1728 in ³ 1 yd ³ = 27 ft ³ |
| Volume | 1 board foot | | 1 ft x 1 ft x 1 in |
| Length | inch foot yard mile | in ft yd mi | 1 in = 12pica 1 ft = 12in 1 yd = 3ft 1760 yd = 1mi |
| Time | Minute Hour Day Year | min h d yr | 1 min = 60 s 1 h = 60 min = 3600 s 1 d = 24 h = 1440 min 1 year = 365 d = 8760 h |
| Mass | Ton Pound Ounce Grain | t lb oz gr | 1 long ton = 2240 lb 1 short ton = 2000 lb 1 US hundred weight = 100 lb 1 lb = 16 oz 1 lb = 7000 grain |
| Pressure | Pound-Force per square foot | PSF | |
| | Pound-Force per square inch | PSI | 1PSI = 144 PSF |
| | Atmosphere | atm | 1atm = 14.70 PSI |

3.1.8 Temperature scales and conversions

| Temperature scale | | Unit | Conversion formulas | | |
|-------------------|-----------|------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| | | | Kelvin | Celsius | Fahrenheit |
| Kelvin | (T_K) | K | | $T_K \approx 273 + T_C$ | $T_K \approx 255 + 5/9 * T_F$ |
| Celsius | (T_C) | °C | $T_C \approx T_K - 273$ | | $T_C \approx 5/9 * (T_F - 32)$ |
| Fahrenheit | (T_F) | °F | $T_F \approx 9/5 T_K - 459$ | $T_F \approx 9/5 * T_C + 32$ | |

3.1.9 Conversion degrees Celcius and Fahrenheit

The white columns show the temperature in degrees Celsius and the grey columns show the temperature values in degrees Fahrenheit. If you

need to convert a temperature from Celsius to Fahrenheit, use the value shown in the grey column. If you need to convert a temperature from Fahrenheit to Celsius, use the value shown in the white column.

| °C | °F | °C | °F | °C | °F | °C | °F | °C | °F |
|------|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|------|
| -200 | -328 | -10 | 14 | 180 | 356 | 370 | 698 | 560 | 1040 |
| -190 | -310 | 0 | 32 | 190 | 374 | 380 | 716 | 570 | 1058 |
| -180 | -292 | 10 | 50 | 200 | 392 | 390 | 734 | 580 | 1076 |
| -170 | -274 | 20 | 68 | 210 | 410 | 400 | 752 | 590 | 1094 |
| -160 | -256 | 30 | 86 | 220 | 428 | 410 | 770 | 600 | 1112 |
| -150 | -238 | 40 | 104 | 230 | 446 | 420 | 788 | 610 | 1130 |
| -140 | -220 | 50 | 122 | 240 | 464 | 430 | 806 | 620 | 1148 |
| -130 | -202 | 60 | 140 | 250 | 482 | 440 | 824 | 630 | 1166 |
| -120 | -184 | 70 | 158 | 260 | 500 | 450 | 842 | 640 | 1184 |
| -110 | -166 | 80 | 176 | 270 | 518 | 460 | 860 | 650 | 1202 |
| -100 | -148 | 90 | 194 | 280 | 536 | 470 | 878 | 660 | 1220 |
| -90 | -130 | 100 | 212 | 290 | 554 | 480 | 896 | 670 | 1238 |
| -80 | -112 | 110 | 230 | 300 | 572 | 490 | 914 | 680 | 1256 |
| -70 | -94 | 120 | 248 | 310 | 590 | 500 | 932 | 690 | 1274 |
| -60 | -76 | 130 | 266 | 320 | 608 | 510 | 950 | 700 | 1292 |
| -50 | -58 | 140 | 284 | 330 | 626 | 520 | 968 | 710 | 1310 |
| -40 | -40 | 150 | 302 | 340 | 644 | 530 | 986 | 720 | 1328 |
| -30 | -22 | 160 | 320 | 350 | 662 | 540 | 1004 | 730 | 1346 |
| -20 | -4 | 170 | 338 | 360 | 680 | 550 | 1022 | 740 | 1364 |

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.10 Imperial (Anglo-Saxon) units

The Anglo-Saxon units (also referred to as Anglo-American measurement systems) are derived from old English systems and were also used in other Commonwealth states prior to the

implementation of the metric system. Nowadays, it is primarily used in the USA and to some extent in Great Britain and in some of the Commonwealth states.

Imperial unit, conversion to SI-Units:

Length, distance

| Imperial Units | Symbol | Conversion to SI-Units |
|-----------------|--------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 inch | in. | 2.539998 cm (UK) 2.540005 cm (USA) |
| 1 foot | ft. | 30.48 cm |
| 1 yard | yd. | 91.44 cm |
| 1 mile | mi. | 1.609 km |
| 1 nautical mile | nmi. | 1.853 km |

Area measurements

| Imperial Units | Symbol | Conversion to SI-Units |
|----------------|----------|------------------------|
| 1 square inch | (sq.in.) | 6.45 cm ² |
| 1 square foot | (sq.ft.) | 929.03 cm ² |
| 1 square yard | (sq.yd.) | 0.836 m ² |

Overview Imperial units and conversion to SI-Units:

Standard measures of volume

| Imperial Units | Symbol | SI-Units |
|----------------|----------|-----------------------|
| 1 cubic inch | (cu.in.) | 16.39 cm ³ |
| 1 cubic foot | (cu.ft.) | 28.32 dm ³ |
| 1 cubic yard | (cu.yd.) | 0.7646 m ³ |

Specific measures of volume

| Imperial Units | Symbol | SI-Units |
|----------------|--------|---|
| 1 gallon | (gal.) | 4.546 dm ³ (UK) 3.787 dm ³ (USA) |
| 1 barrel | (bbl.) | 163.7 dm ³ (UK) 119.2 dm ³ (USA) 158.8 dm ³ (USA, oil) |

Measures of weight and mass

| Imperial Units | Symbol | SI-Units |
|----------------|--------|-----------|
| 1 ounce | (oz) | 28.35 g |
| 1 pound | (lb) | 0.4536 kg |

Density

| Imperial Units | SI-Units |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 lb/cu.in. (= 1lb/in ³) | 2.766*10 ⁴ kg/m ³ |
| 1 lb/cu.ft. (= 1 lb/ft ³) | 16.02 kg/m ³ |

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.10 Imperial (Anglo-Saxon) units

Overview Imperial units and conversion to SI-Units:

Force, weight

| Imperial Units | SI-Units |
|-------------------|----------|
| 1 lbf (lb. Force) | 4.448 N |

Energy, work, heat

| Imperial Units | SI-Units |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1 BTU | 1055.06 J |

Power, capacity

| Imperial Units | SI-Units |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1 BTU/sec | 1055.06 W |
| 1 BTU/h | 0.293 W |
| 1 hp | 745.7 W |

Pressure, stress

| Imperial Units | SI-Units |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1 lbg/sq in. | 6894.7 N/m ² |
| 1 lbg/sq ft | 47.88 N/m ² |

Speed

| Imperial Units | SI-Units |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Knot intern. (kn.) | 0.514 m/s 1.852 km/h |
| 1 inch/second | 0.0254 m/s 0.0914 km/h |
| 1 foot/second (ft./s.) | 0.3048 m/s 1.0973 km/h |
| 1 yard/second (yd./s.) | 0.9144 m/s 3.294 km/h |
| 1 yard/minute (yd./min.) | 0.01524 m/s 0.055 km/h |
| 1 mile per hour (m.p.h.) | 0.447 m/s 1.609 km/h |

3.1.11 Conversion of energy and heat scales

| Unit | Joule (J) | Kilojoule (kJ) | Megajoule (MJ) | Kilowatt hours (kWh) | Kilocalorie (Kcal) | British Thermal Unit (BTU) |
|----------------------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Joule (J) | | 0.001 | 10^{-6} | 2.78×10^{-7} | 2.39×10^{-4} | 9.479×10^{-4} |
| Kilojoule (kJ) | 1000 | | 0.001 | 2.7810×10^{-4} | 0.239 | 0.948 |
| Megajoule (MJ) | 10^6 | 1000 | | 0.278 | 238.8 | 948 |
| Kilowatt hours (kWh) | 3.6×10^6 | 3600 | 3.6 | | 859.8 | 3412.3 |
| Kilocalorie (Kcal) | 4187 | 4.187 | 4.19×10^{-3} | 1.2×10^{-3} | | 3.873 |
| British Thermal Unit (BTU) | 1055 | 1.055 | 1.055×10^{-3} | 2.933×10^{-4} | 0.252 | |

3.1.12 Conversion of power scales

| Unit | Watt (W) | Kilowatt (kW) | Kilocalorie per second (kcal/s) | Horsepower (HP) | British Thermal Unit per second (BTU/s) | British Thermal Unit per hour (BTU/h) |
|---|----------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| Watt (W) | | 0.001 | 2.39×10^{-4} | 1.36×10^{-3} | 0.948×10^{-3} | 3415.2×10^{-3} |
| Kilowatt (kW) | 1000 | | 0.239 | 1.36 | 0.948 | 3415.2 |
| Kilocalorie per second (kcal/s) | 4186.8 | 4.187 | | 5.692 | 3.968 | 1.429×10^3 |
| Horse power (HP) | 735.5 | 0.736 | 0.176 | | 0.698 | 2551.9 |
| British Thermal Unit per second (BTU/s) | 1055.06 | 1.06 | 0.252 | 1.433 | | 3600 |
| British Thermal Unit per hour (BTU/h) | 0.293 | 2.93×10^{-4} | 7.000×10^{-5} | 3.981×10^{-4} | 2.777×10^{-3} | |

3.1 Units, conversion factors and tables

3.1.13 Conversion of pressure scales

| Unit | Pascal (Pa) | Bar | atm | lb/sq ft | lb/sq in. |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| Pascal (Pa) | | 10 ⁻⁵ | 9.869 * 10 ⁻⁶ | 0.201 | 1.450 * 10 ⁻⁴ |
| Bar | 10 ⁵ | | 0.987 | 2088.5 | 13.50 |
| atm | 101325 | 1.013 | | 2116.2 | 14.70 |
| lb/sq ft. | 47.88 | 4.788 * 10 ⁻⁴ | 4.723 * 10 ⁻⁴ | | 6.944 * 10 ⁻³ |
| lb/sq in. | 6894.8 | 0.0689 | 0.0680 | 144.00 | |

3.1.14 Conversion of SI-units into Imperial units, pre-SI units and technical scales

| Symbol | Quantity | SI-Unit | Technical scales | Imperials units |
|----------------|--|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Q | Heat, energy | J | kcal = 4186.8 J | 1 BTU = 1055.06 J |
| Q | Energy, heat flux | W/m ² | $\frac{\text{kcal}}{\text{m}^2 \text{ h}} = 1.163 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2}$ | $\frac{1 \text{ BTU}}{(\text{sq.ft.hr.})} = 3.1546 \frac{\text{W}}{\text{m}^2}$ |
| λ | Thermal conductivity | W/(m K) | $\frac{\text{kcal}}{\text{m}^2 \text{ h}} = 1.163 \frac{\text{W}}{(\text{m K})}$ | $\frac{1 \text{ BTU}}{(\text{ft.hr.}^\circ\text{F})} = 1.7307 \frac{\text{W}}{(\text{m K})}$ $\frac{1 \text{ BTU in}}{(\text{sq.ft.hr.}^\circ\text{F})} = 0.1442 \frac{\text{W}}{(\text{m K})}$ $\frac{1 \text{ BTU}}{(\text{in.hr.}^\circ\text{F})} = 20.7688 \frac{\text{W}}{(\text{m K})}$ |
| R | Heat resistivity coefficient (R-value) | m ² K/W | $1 \frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{h}} \frac{\text{K}}{\text{kcal}} = 0.86 \frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{W}}$ | $\frac{1 \text{ sq.ft.hr.}^\circ\text{F}}{\text{BTU}} = 0.1761 \frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{W}}$ |
| α | Heat transfer coefficient | W/(m ² K) | $\frac{\text{kcal}}{(\text{m}^2 \text{ h K})} = 1.163 \frac{\text{W}}{(\text{m}^2 \text{ K})}$ | $\frac{1 \text{ BTU}}{(\text{sq.ft.hr.}^\circ\text{F})} = 5.6783 \frac{\text{W}}{(\text{m}^2 \text{ K})}$ |
| C _p | specific heat capacity | kJ/(kg K) | $\frac{\text{kcal}}{(\text{kg K})} = 4.1868 \frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg K}}$ | $\frac{1 \text{ BTU}}{(\text{lb. }^\circ\text{F})} = 4.1868 \frac{\text{kJ}}{(\text{kg K})}$ |
| C | Radiant coefficient | W/(m ² K ⁴) | $\frac{\text{kcal}}{(\text{m}^2 \text{ h K}^4)} = 1.63 \frac{\text{W}}{(\text{m}^2 \text{ K}^4)}$ | $\frac{1 \text{ BTU}}{(\text{sq.ft.hr.}^\circ\text{R}^4)} = 33.156 \frac{\text{kJ}}{(\text{m}^2 \text{ K}^4)}$ |

3.1.15 Density Conversion table

Density

Imperial conversion to SI:

| lb / ft ³ | kg / m ³ | lb / ft ³ | kg / m ³ |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 | 16 | 8.75 | 140 |
| 1.25 | 20 | 9 | 144 |
| 1.5 | 24 | 9.25 | 148 |
| 1.75 | 28 | 9.5 | 152 |
| 2 | 32 | 9.75 | 156 |
| 2.25 | 36 | 10 | 160 |
| 2.5 | 40 | 10.25 | 164 |
| 2.75 | 44 | 10.5 | 168 |
| 3 | 48 | 10.75 | 172 |
| 3.25 | 52 | 11 | 176 |
| 3.5 | 56 | 11.25 | 180 |
| 3.75 | 60 | 11.5 | 184 |
| 4 | 64 | 11.75 | 188 |
| 4.25 | 68 | 12 | 192 |
| 4.5 | 72 | 12.25 | 196 |
| 4.75 | 76 | 12.5 | 200 |
| 5 | 80 | 12.75 | 204 |
| 5.25 | 84 | 13 | 208 |
| 5.5 | 88 | 13.25 | 212 |
| 5.75 | 92 | 13.5 | 216 |
| 6 | 96 | 13.75 | 220 |
| 6.25 | 100 | 14 | 224 |
| 6.5 | 104 | 14.25 | 228 |
| 6.75 | 108 | 14.5 | 232 |
| 7 | 112 | 14.75 | 236 |
| 7.25 | 116 | 15 | 240 |
| 7.5 | 120 | 15.25 | 244 |
| 7.75 | 124 | 15.5 | 248 |
| 8 | 128 | 15.75 | 252 |
| 8.25 | 132 | 16 | 256 |
| 8.5 | 136 | | |

SI conversion to Imperial:

| kg / m ³ | lb / ft ³ | kg / m ³ | lb / ft ³ |
|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 20 | 1.25 | 125 | 7.80 |
| 25 | 1.56 | 130 | 8.12 |
| 30 | 1.87 | 135 | 8.43 |
| 35 | 2.18 | 140 | 8.74 |
| 40 | 2.50 | 145 | 9.05 |
| 45 | 2.81 | 150 | 9.36 |
| 50 | 3.12 | 155 | 9.68 |
| 55 | 3.43 | 160 | 9.99 |
| 60 | 3.75 | 165 | 10.30 |
| 65 | 4.06 | 170 | 10.61 |
| 70 | 4.37 | 175 | 10.92 |
| 75 | 4.68 | 180 | 11.24 |
| 80 | 4.99 | 185 | 11.55 |
| 85 | 5.31 | 190 | 11.86 |
| 90 | 5.62 | 195 | 12.17 |
| 95 | 5.93 | 200 | 12.49 |
| 100 | 6.24 | 205 | 12.80 |
| 105 | 6.55 | 210 | 13.11 |
| 110 | 6.87 | 215 | 13.42 |
| 115 | 7.18 | 220 | 13.73 |
| 120 | 7.49 | | |

3. Tables

3.2 Product properties insulation and cladding materials

3.2.1 Insulation materials

The characteristic properties of the individual ProRox® products are described in Chapter 4. For special applications, such as high-temperature insulation systems, cold insulation products or an additional spacer, it may be necessary to use ProRox® products in connection with other insulation products. These may include, for example:

- CMS Calcium-Magnesium-Silicate fibers for high-temperature insulations
- Cellular glass as a spacer or as a support

In any case, it is important that the product properties and processing instructions are taken into consideration during the application of these products. Further product information can be found in the various standards and regulations, such as DIN 4140, CINI, VDI 2055 and various other ASTM standards for example.

3.2.2 Cladding materials

3.2.2.1 Application selector for claddings

| Cladding material | Fire hazardous environment | Corrosive environment | Maximum surface (cladding) temperature | | |
|--|----------------------------|-----------------------|--|------------------|------------------|
| | | | < 120 °F (50 °C) | < 140 °F (60 °C) | > 140 °F (60 °C) |
| Aluminum | - | - | | | + |
| Alu-zinc steel | - | - | | | + |
| Galvanized steel | + | - | | | + |
| Stainless steel | | | | | |
| Aluminized steel | + | + | | | + |
| Painted steel or aluminum | - | - | | + | |
| Glass-fiber reinforced polyester (e.g. ProRox® GRP 1000) | - | + | | | 190 °F (90 °C) |
| Mastics | - | - | | | 175 °F (80 °C) |
| Foils | - | - | + | | |

- not recommendable
+ suitable in general

The selection of material should be geared to each installation and/or environment.

3.2.2.2 Product properties and standards

| Cladding material | Density (lb/ft ³) | Linear expansion coefficient 10-6 R-1 | Emissivity |
|--|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| Aluminum, bright | 168.56 | 13.328 | 0.05 |
| Aluminum, oxydized | 168.56 | 13.328 | 0.13 |
| Galvanized steel, bright | 490 | 6.16 | 0.26 |
| Galvanized steel, oxidized | | 6.16 | 0.44 |
| Stainless steel | 490 | 8.96 | 0.15 |
| Alu-zinc steel, bright - | | | 0.16 |
| Alu-zinc steel, oxidized - | | | 0.18 |
| Aluminized steel | 490 | 6.16 | |
| Painted steel - | | | 0.9 |
| Glass-fiber reinforced polyester (e.g. ProRox® GRP 1000) | | | 0.9 |
| Bare ProRox® insulation | | | 0.9 |

3.2.2.3 Thickness metal cladding in accordance with CINI

| External diameter insulation (mm) | Sheet thickness in mm | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| | Aluminum (CINI 3.1.01) | Aluminized steel (CINI 3.1.02) | Alu-zinc steel (CINI 3.1.03) | Galvanized steel (CINI 3.1.04) | Stainless steel (CINI 3.1.05) |
| < 140 | 0.6 | 0.56 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 |
| 130 - 300 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.8 |
| > 300 | 1.0 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.8 |

NOTE: Metric values above are from CINI standard. For US units refer to table on page 37.

3.2 Product properties insulation and cladding materials

3.2.2 Cladding materials

3.2.2.4 Thickness metal cladding in accordance with DIN 4140

| External diameter insulation (mm) | Minimum sheet thickness | | | Overlap | |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|----------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| | Galvanized. Aluminized. Alu-zinc and painted steel | Stainless steel E DIN EN 10028-7 and DIN EN 10088-3 | Aluminum | Longitudinal joint | Circumferential joint |
| up to 400 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 30 | 50 |
| 400 to 800 | 0.6 | 0.5 | 0.8 | 40 | |
| 800 to 1200 | 0.7 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 50 | |
| 1200 to 2000 | 0.8 | 0.6 | 1.0 | | |
| 2000 to 6000 | 1.0 | 0.8 | 1.0 | | |
| > 6000 | 1.0 | 0.8 | 1.2 | | |

^a Smaller sheet thicknesses are also possible in consultation with the customer.

^b With regard to pipes, the circumferential joint overlap can be omitted if the circumferential joints are joined by swage and counter swage. In the case of cladding with a large surface area and high wind loads, structural verifications may be required. In that instance, only those binding agents permitted by the building authorities may be used. The DIN 1055-4 applies in respect of the loading assumptions.

3.2.2.5 Thickness of metal cladding in accordance with BS 5970

| Type of area | Protected mild steel | | Aluminum | | Stainless steel | |
|--|---------------------------|-------------|----------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| | Flat mm | Profiled mm | Flat mm | Profiled mm | Flat mm | Profiled mm |
| Large flat areas over flexible insulation | 1.2 | 0.8 | 1.6 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 0.6 |
| Smaller flat areas over flexible insulation, or large areas over pre-formed boards/slabs (including large curved surfaces) | 1.0 | 0.8 | 1.2 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.5 |
| Removable insulated manhole and door covers | 1.6 | - | 1.6 | - | 1.0 | - |
| Flange and valve boxes | As metal on adjacent pipe | | | | | |
| Pipes with an insulated diameter of more than 450 mm | 1.0 | - | 1.2 | - | 0.8 | - |
| Pipes with an insulated diameter of 150 mm to 450 mm | 0.8 | - | 0.9 | - | 0.6 | - |
| Pipes with an insulated diameter of less than 150 mm ^a | 0.6 | - | 0.7 | - | 0.5 | - |
| <i>Recommended thickness for reinforcing plates and where foot traffic is likely</i> | | | | | | |
| For flat surfaces, large curved areas and pipes with an insulated diameter of 450 mm or more | 1.6 | - | 1.6 | - | 1.0 | - |
| For pipes with an insulated diameter of less than 450 mm | 1.0 | - | 1.2 | - | 0.8 | - |
| <i>Recommended thickness where no mechanical damage is likely</i> | | | | | | |
| For pipes with an insulated diameter of less than 1000 mm | 0.3 | - | 0.3 | - | 0.3 | - |
| For pipes with an insulated diameter of more than 1000 mm | 0.4 | - | 0.4 | - | 0.4 | - |

^a For insulation diameters of 150 mm or less, the thickness of reeded aluminum should be not less than 0.25 mm. For insulation diameters in excess of 150 mm, it should be 0.4 mm or greater.

3. Tables

3.3 Usage tables

3.3.1 Construction materials

| Material | Density lb / ft ³ | Thermal conductivity BTU.in / (ft ² .hr.°F) at 75 °F | Specific heat capacity BTU / (lb °F) | Linear expansion coefficient 10 ⁻⁶ R ⁻¹ |
|---------------------|------------------------------|---|---|--|
| Aluminum | 169 | 1532 | 0.220 | 13.33 |
| Concrete | 150 | 14.6 | 0.22 - 0.26 | 6.16 - 6.72 |
| Bitumen (Solid) | 66 | 1.18 | 0.41 - 0.46 | 112 |
| Bronze, red brass | 512 | 423 | 0.088 | 9.8 |
| Cast iron | 490 - 443 | 291 - 437 | 0.129 | 5.82 |
| Wrought (cast) iron | 487 | 465 | 0.110 | 6.55 |
| Copper | 559 | 2725 | 0.096 | 9.24 |
| Wet soil | 100 - 125 | 8.3 - 20.8 | 0.478 | - |
| Dry soil | 87 - 100 | 2.8 - 4.2 | 0.201 | - |
| Stainless steel | 481 - 506 | 69 - 319 | 0.119 | 8.96 |
| Iron | 490 | 319 - 361 | 0.115 | 6.16 |

3.3.2 Fluids which are commonly used in process industry

| Group | Material | Density lb/ft ³ | Specific heat capacity BTU/(lb F) at 70 °F |
|----------|----------------|----------------------------|---|
| General | Water | 62.5 | 1.001 |
| Alcohols | Ethanol | 44.5 | 0.559 |
| | Methanol | 49.5 | 0.596 |
| Food | Beer | 64 | 0.900 |
| Milk | Milk | 64 | 0.941 |
| | Olive oil | 57.5 | 0.471 |
| Fuels | Petrol | 38.5 to 49 | 0.482 |
| | Diesel | 52 | 0.461 |
| | Fuel oil (HEL) | 53 | 0.449 |
| | Fuel oil (HS) | 61 | 0.411 |
| | Petroleum | 49 | 0.525 |



3.3 Usage tables

3.3.2 Fluids which are commonly used in process industry



| Group | Material | Density lb/ft ³ | Specific heat capacity BTU/(lb F) at 70 °F |
|---------|-------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| Oils | Silicone oil | 59 | |
| | Machine oil | 57 | 0.399 |
| Acids | Hydrochloric acid (10%) | 67 | |
| | Hydrochloric acid (30%) | 72 | 0.869 |
| | Nitric acid (10 %) | 65.5 | |
| | Nitric acid (<90%) | 93.5 | 0.411 |
| | Sulfuric acid (10%) | 67 | |
| | Sulfuric acid (50%) | 87.5 | |
| | Sulfuric acid (100%) | 115 | 0.253 |
| Bases | Ammonia (30%) | 38 | 1.132 |
| | Sodium hydroxide (50%) | 95 | |
| Various | Benzol | 55 | 0.413 |
| | Dichlormethane | 83.5 | 0.277 |
| | Toluene | 54 | 0.411 |
| | Bitumen (fluid) | 68 to 94 | 0.499 to 0.549 |

3.3.3 Gases which are commonly used in process industry

| Gas | Density at 1 bar lb/f ³ | Specific heat capacity BTU/(lb F) at 70 °F |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|--|
| Acetylene | 0.067 | 0.403 |
| Ammonia | 0.044 | 0.500 |
| Chlorine | 0.184 | 0.114 |
| Ethane | 0.077 | 0.419 |
| Ethylene | 0.072 | 0.371 |
| Carbon dioxide | 0.111 | 0.202 |
| Carbon monoxide | 0.072 | 0.248 |
| Air | 0.074 | 0.241 |
| Methane | 0.041 | 0.532 |
| Propane | 0.115 | 0.399 |
| Oxygen | 0.082 | 0.218 |
| Nitrogen | 0.072 | 0.248 |
| Hydrogen | 0.051 | 3.425 |

3.3.4 Conversion factors in relation to the heat of combustion

| Fuel | Heat of combustion MBTU/1000lb | Conversion Factor lb CO ₂ /MBTU | Conversion factor lb CO ₂ /lb fuel |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| Oil | 18.2 | 170 | 3.1 |
| Liquified gas | 19.0 | 149 | 28.3 |
| Petrol | 19.0 | 161 | 3.1 |
| Kerosene | 18.8 | 167 | 3.1 |
| Diesel | 18.5 | 172 | 3.2 |
| Ethane | 19.9 | 143 | 2.9 |
| Petroleum cokes | 14.0 | 227 | 3.2 |
| Black coal | 12.1 | 220 | 2.7 |
| Brown coal | 5.1 | 235 | 1.2 |
| Gas cokes | 12.1 | 249 | 3 |
| Gas | 20.6 | 130 | 2.7 |

3.3 Usage tables

3.3.5 Specific enthalpy super heated steam in kJ/kg

| Pressure in bar | Steam temperature in °C | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 350 | 400 | 450 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 |
| 1 | 2776.1 | 2874.8 | 2973.9 | 3073.9 | 3175.3 | 3278 | 3382.3 | 3488.2 | 3705 | 3928.8 | 4159.7 |
| 5 | | 2854.9 | 2960.1 | 3063.7 | 3167.4 | 3271.7 | 3377.2 | 3483.9 | 3701.9 | 3926.5 | 4157.8 |
| 10 | | 2827.4 | 2941.9 | 3050.6 | 3157.3 | 3263.8 | 3370.7 | 3478.6 | 3698.1 | 3923.6 | 4155.5 |
| 20 | | | 2901.6 | 3022.7 | 3136.6 | 3247.5 | 3357.5 | 3467.7 | 3690.2 | 3917.6 | 4150.9 |
| 30 | | | 2854.8 | 2922.6 | 3114.8 | 3230.7 | 3344.1 | 3456.6 | 3682.3 | 3911.7 | 4146.3 |
| 40 | | | | 2959.7 | 3091.8 | 3213.4 | 3330.4 | 3445.4 | 3674.3 | 3905.7 | 4141.7 |
| 50 | | | | 2923.5 | 3067.7 | 3195.5 | 3316.3 | 3433.9 | 3666.2 | 3899.7 | 4137 |
| 60 | | | | 2883.2 | 3042.2 | 3177 | 3301.9 | 3422.3 | 3658.1 | 3893.6 | 4132.3 |
| 70 | | | | 2837.6 | 3015.1 | 3157.9 | 3287.3 | 3410.5 | 3649.8 | 3887.5 | 4127.6 |
| 80 | | | | 2784.6 | 2986.3 | 3138 | 3272.2 | 3398.5 | 3641.5 | 3881.4 | 4122.9 |
| 90 | | | | | 2955.5 | 3117.5 | 3256.9 | 3386.4 | 3633.2 | 3875.2 | 4118.2 |
| 100 | | | | | 2922.2 | 3096.1 | 3241.1 | 3374 | 3624.7 | 3869 | 4113.5 |
| 150 | | | | | 2691.3 | 2974.7 | 3156.6 | 3309.3 | 3581.5 | 3837.6 | 4089.6 |
| 200 | | | | | | 2816.9 | 3060.8 | 3239.4 | 3536.7 | 3805.5 | 4065.4 |
| 250 | | | | | | 2578.1 | 2950.6 | 3164.2 | 3490.4 | 3773 | 4041.1 |
| 300 | | | | | | 2150.7 | 2822.3 | 3083.5 | 3443.1 | 3740.1 | 4016.7 |
| 350 | | | | | | 1988.3 | 2672.9 | 2997.3 | 3394.7 | 3706.9 | 3992.2 |
| 400 | | | | | | 1930.8 | 2513.2 | 2906.7 | 3345.8 | 3673.8 | 3967.8 |
| 450 | | | | | | 1897.3 | 2377.7 | 2814.2 | 3296.6 | 3640.7 | 3943.6 |
| 500 | | | | | | 1874.1 | 2284.7 | 2724.2 | 3247.7 | 3607.8 | 3919.5 |
| 600 | | | | | | 1843.0 | 2180.0 | 2571.9 | 3152.3 | 3543.5 | 3872.3 |
| 700 | | | | | | 1822.8 | 2123.6 | 2466.9 | 3063.8 | 3481.9 | 3826.7 |
| 800 | | | | | | 1808.7 | 2087.9 | 2397.7 | 2985.4 | 3424.2 | 3783.3 |
| 900 | | | | | | 1798.4 | 2063.2 | 2350.3 | 2918.7 | 3371.1 | 3742.4 |
| 1000 | | | | | | 1790.9 | 2045.1 | 2316.2 | 2863.4 | 3323.1 | 3704.3 |

3.3.6 Density super heated steam kg/m³

| Pressure in bar | Steam temperature in °C | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 350 | 400 | 450 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 |
| 1 | 0.52 | 0.46 | 0.42 | 0.38 | 0.35 | 0.32 | 0.30 | 0.28 | 0.25 | 0.22 | 0.20 |
| 5 | | 2.35 | 2.11 | 1.91 | 1.75 | 1.62 | 1.51 | 1.41 | 1.24 | 1.11 | 1.01 |
| 10 | | 4.86 | 4.30 | 3.88 | 3.54 | 3.26 | 3.03 | 1.82 | 2.49 | 2.23 | 2.02 |
| 20 | | | 8.98 | 7.97 | 7.22 | 6.61 | 6.12 | 5.69 | 5.01 | 4.48 | 4.05 |
| 30 | | | 14.17 | 12.33 | 11.05 | 10.07 | 9.27 | 8.61 | 7.55 | 6.74 | 6.09 |
| 40 | | | | 17.00 | 15.05 | 13.62 | 12.50 | 11.57 | 10.12 | 9.01 | 8.14 |
| 50 | | | | 22.07 | 19.26 | 17.30 | 15.80 | 14.59 | 12.71 | 11.30 | 10.19 |
| 60 | | | | 27.66 | 23.69 | 21.10 | 19.18 | 17.65 | 15.33 | 13.60 | 12.25 |
| 70 | | | | 33.94 | 28.38 | 25.05 | 22.65 | 20.78 | 17.97 | 15.91 | 14.32 |
| 80 | | | | 41.23 | 33.39 | 29.14 | 26.20 | 23.96 | 20.64 | 18.24 | 16.39 |
| 90 | | | | | 38.78 | 33.41 | 29.86 | 27.20 | 23.34 | 20.58 | 18.47 |
| 100 | | | | | 44.61 | 37.87 | 33.61 | 30.50 | 26.07 | 22.94 | 20.56 |
| 150 | | | | | 87.19 | 63.89 | 51.20 | 48.08 | 40.15 | 34.94 | 31.12 |
| 200 | | | | | | 100.54 | 78.73 | 67.71 | 55.04 | 47.32 | 41.87 |
| 250 | | | | | | 166.63 | 109.09 | 89.90 | 70.79 | 60.08 | 52.80 |
| 300 | | | | | | 358.05 | 148.45 | 115.26 | 87.48 | 73.23 | 63.92 |
| 350 | | | | | | 474.89 | 201.63 | 144.43 | 105.15 | 86.78 | 75.21 |
| 400 | | | | | | 523.67 | 270.91 | 177.97 | 123.81 | 100.71 | 86.68 |
| 450 | | | | | | 554.78 | 343.37 | 215.87 | 143.44 | 115.01 | 98.31 |
| 500 | | | | | | 577.99 | 402.28 | 256.95 | 163.99 | 129.64 | 110.09 |
| 600 | | | | | | 612.45 | 479.87 | 338.44 | 207.20 | 159.77 | 134.02 |
| 700 | | | | | | 638.30 | 528.62 | 405.76 | 251.73 | 190.65 | 158.30 |
| 800 | | | | | | 659.27 | 563.69 | 456.99 | 295.45 | 221.74 | 182.72 |
| 900 | | | | | | 677.05 | 591.14 | 496.53 | 336.53 | 252.48 | 207.03 |
| 1000 | | | | | | 692.58 | 613.80 | 528.21 | 373.93 | 282.36 | 231.03 |

3.3 Usage tables

3.3.7 Dew point table

| Air temperature | Maximum water content grain/ft ³ | Maximum cooling (°F) of air temperature (to avoid condensation) at a humidity of | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| | | 30 % | 35 % | 40 % | 45 % | 50 % | 55 % | 60 % | 65 % | 70 % | 75 % | 80 % | 85 % | 90 % | 95 % |
| -22 | 0.15 | 20.0 | 17.6 | 15.5 | 13.5 | 11.9 | 10.3 | 8.8 | 7.6 | 6.3 | 5.0 | 4.0 | 2.9 | 2.0 | 1.1 |
| -13 | 0.24 | 20.7 | 18.2 | 16.0 | 14.0 | 12.2 | 10.6 | 9.2 | 7.7 | 6.5 | 5.2 | 4.1 | 3.1 | 2.0 | 1.1 |
| -4 | 0.39 | 21.6 | 18.7 | 16.4 | 14.4 | 12.6 | 10.8 | 9.4 | 8.1 | 6.7 | 5.2 | 4.1 | 3.1 | 2.0 | 1.1 |
| 5 | 0.61 | 22.1 | 19.4 | 17.3 | 14.9 | 13.1 | 11.5 | 9.7 | 8.3 | 6.8 | 5.6 | 4.5 | 3.2 | 2.2 | 1.1 |
| 14 | 0.95 | 23.2 | 20.3 | 17.8 | 15.7 | 13.7 | 11.9 | 10.3 | 8.6 | 7.0 | 5.8 | 4.5 | 3.2 | 2.2 | 1.1 |
| 23 | 1.43 | 24.1 | 21.1 | 18.5 | 16.2 | 14.2 | 12.2 | 10.6 | 9.0 | 7.4 | 5.9 | 4.7 | 3.4 | 2.2 | 1.1 |
| 32 | 2.10 | 25.0 | 22.0 | 19.3 | 16.7 | 14.6 | 12.8 | 10.8 | 9.2 | 7.6 | 6.3 | 4.9 | 3.4 | 2.3 | 1.3 |
| 36 | 2.45 | 25.7 | 22.7 | 19.8 | 17.5 | 15.3 | 13.3 | 11.5 | 9.7 | 8.3 | 6.8 | 5.4 | 4.0 | 2.7 | 1.3 |
| 39 | 2.80 | 26.5 | 23.4 | 20.5 | 18.2 | 16.0 | 13.9 | 12.1 | 10.4 | 8.8 | 7.2 | 5.6 | 4.1 | 2.7 | 1.3 |
| 43 | 3.19 | 27.2 | 24.1 | 21.2 | 18.7 | 16.6 | 14.6 | 12.6 | 11.0 | 9.2 | 7.4 | 5.8 | 4.1 | 2.7 | 1.3 |
| 46 | 3.63 | 28.1 | 24.8 | 22.0 | 19.4 | 17.3 | 15.1 | 13.1 | 11.2 | 9.2 | 7.6 | 5.8 | 4.1 | 2.7 | 1.4 |
| 50 | 4.11 | 28.8 | 25.6 | 22.7 | 20.2 | 18.0 | 17.3 | 13.3 | 11.3 | 9.4 | 7.6 | 5.9 | 4.3 | 2.9 | 1.4 |
| 54 | 4.68 | 29.7 | 26.3 | 23.4 | 20.9 | 18.2 | 15.8 | 13.5 | 11.5 | 9.5 | 7.7 | 5.9 | 4.3 | 2.9 | 1.4 |
| 57 | 5.29 | 30.4 | 27.2 | 24.1 | 21.1 | 18.5 | 16.0 | 13.7 | 11.7 | 9.7 | 7.7 | 6.1 | 4.5 | 2.9 | 1.4 |
| 61 | 5.94 | 31.3 | 27.9 | 24.5 | 21.4 | 18.7 | 16.2 | 14.0 | 11.9 | 9.9 | 7.9 | 6.3 | 4.5 | 3.1 | 1.4 |
| 64 | 6.73 | 32.0 | 28.3 | 24.8 | 21.8 | 19.1 | 16.6 | 14.2 | 12.1 | 10.1 | 8.1 | 6.3 | 4.5 | 3.1 | 1.4 |
| 68 | 7.56 | 32.6 | 28.6 | 25.2 | 22.1 | 19.3 | 16.7 | 14.4 | 12.2 | 10.1 | 8.3 | 6.5 | 4.7 | 3.1 | 1.4 |
| 72 | 8.48 | 33.1 | 29.0 | 25.6 | 22.5 | 19.6 | 17.1 | 14.6 | 12.4 | 10.3 | 8.5 | 6.5 | 4.7 | 3.1 | 1.4 |
| 75 | 9.53 | 33.5 | 29.5 | 25.9 | 22.7 | 20.0 | 17.3 | 14.8 | 12.6 | 10.4 | 8.5 | 6.7 | 4.9 | 3.2 | 1.4 |
| 79 | 10.66 | 34.0 | 29.9 | 26.5 | 23.0 | 20.2 | 17.5 | 15.1 | 12.8 | 10.6 | 8.6 | 6.7 | 4.9 | 3.2 | 1.6 |
| 82 | 11.89 | 34.6 | 30.4 | 26.8 | 23.4 | 20.5 | 17.8 | 15.3 | 13.0 | 10.8 | 8.8 | 6.8 | 5.0 | 3.2 | 1.6 |
| 86 | 13.24 | 35.1 | 30.8 | 27.2 | 23.8 | 20.9 | 18.2 | 15.5 | 13.1 | 11.0 | 9.0 | 6.8 | 5.0 | 3.2 | 1.6 |
| 95 | 17.22 | 36.4 | 31.9 | 28.3 | 24.7 | 21.6 | 18.7 | 16.2 | 13.7 | 11.3 | 9.2 | 7.2 | 5.2 | 3.4 | 1.6 |
| 104 | 22.16 | 37.6 | 33.1 | 29.0 | 25.6 | 22.3 | 19.4 | 16.7 | 14.2 | 11.7 | 9.5 | 7.4 | 5.4 | 3.6 | 1.6 |
| 113 | 28.19 | 38.9 | 34.2 | 30.1 | 26.5 | 23.0 | 20.2 | 17.3 | 14.6 | 12.2 | 9.9 | 7.7 | 5.6 | 3.8 | 1.6 |
| 122 | 35.96 | 40.1 | 35.5 | 31.1 | 27.4 | 24.8 | 20.9 | 17.8 | 15.1 | 12.6 | 10.3 | 7.9 | 5.8 | 3.8 | 1.6 |
| 131 | 45.62 | 41.4 | 36.4 | 32.0 | 28.1 | 24.7 | 21.2 | 18.4 | 15.5 | 12.8 | 10.4 | 8.1 | 5.8 | 3.8 | 1.6 |
| 140 | 56.90 | 42.7 | 37.6 | 33.1 | 29.0 | 25.4 | 22.0 | 18.9 | 16.0 | 13.1 | 10.6 | 8.3 | 5.9 | 3.8 | 1.6 |
| 149 | 70.49 | 44.1 | 38.9 | 34.2 | 29.9 | 26.1 | 22.7 | 19.4 | 16.4 | 13.7 | 11.0 | 8.5 | 6.1 | 3.8 | 1.6 |
| 158 | 82.24 | 45.4 | 40.0 | 35.1 | 30.8 | 27.0 | 23.4 | 20.0 | 16.9 | 14.2 | 11.2 | 8.6 | 6.1 | 3.8 | 1.6 |
| 167 | 105.75 | 46.8 | 41.2 | 36.2 | 31.9 | 27.7 | 23.9 | 20.5 | 17.3 | 14.4 | 11.5 | 8.8 | 6.3 | 4.0 | 1.6 |
| 176 | 123.84 | 48.2 | 42.5 | 37.3 | 32.8 | 28.4 | 24.7 | 21.1 | 17.8 | 14.8 | 11.9 | 9.0 | 6.5 | 4.0 | 1.6 |

3.3.8 Climate data

3.3.8.1 Average climate data

| North America | Min. Temperature (1% Frequency) | | Max. Temperature (1% Frequency) | | Winter Wind (1% Frequency) | | Condensation | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|------|----------------------------------|----|--------------------------------|----|
| | | | | | | | Dew Point Temp (1% Frequency) | | Mean Coincident Temperature | |
| | °F | °C | °F | °C | MPH | m/s | °F | °C | °F | °C |
| Acapulco, Guerrero, MX | 69 | 21 | 92 | 33 | 18.6 | 8.3 | 79 | 26 | 87 | 31 |
| Bakersfield, CA | 35 | 2 | 100 | 38 | 18.3 | 8.2 | 63 | 17 | 85 | 30 |
| Bangor, ME | -2 | -19 | 84 | 29 | 23.5 | 10.5 | 68 | 20 | 75 | 24 |
| Boston, MA | 13 | -11 | 88 | 31 | 26.8 | 12 | 71 | 22 | 79 | 26 |
| Casper, WY | -1 | -18 | 91 | 33 | 32.2 | 14.4 | 55 | 13 | 66 | 19 |
| Charleston, SC | 30 | -1 | 92 | 33 | 20.4 | 9.1 | 78 | 25 | 83 | 29 |
| Chicago, IL | 4 | -16 | 89 | 32 | 24.6 | 11 | 73 | 23 | 82 | 28 |
| Denver, CO | 6 | -15 | 92 | 33 | 26.8 | 12 | 59 | 15 | 68 | 20 |
| El Paso, TX | 28 | -3 | 98 | 37 | 26.4 | 11.8 | 65 | 19 | 73 | 23 |
| Fort McMurray, AB | -28 | -34 | 80 | 27 | 18.6 | 8.3 | 59 | 15 | 69 | 20 |
| Halifax, NS | 3 | -16 | 79 | 26 | 27.5 | 12.3 | 67 | 20 | 72 | 22 |
| Houston, TX | 34 | 1 | 95 | 35 | 17.7 | 7.9 | 77 | 25 | 82 | 28 |
| Long Beach, CA | 44 | 6 | 88 | 31 | 17.0 | 7.6 | 67 | 19 | 75 | 24 |
| Louisville, KY | 16 | -9 | 92 | 33 | 21.0 | 9.4 | 74 | 24 | 83 | 28 |
| Memphis, TN | 23 | -5 | 94 | 35 | 20.1 | 9 | 76 | 24 | 85 | 29 |
| Mexico City, DF, MX | 42 | 6 | 82 | 28 | 47.2 | 21.1 | 57 | 14 | 63 | 17 |
| Miami, FL | 52 | 11 | 91 | 33 | 20.4 | 9.1 | 78 | 25 | 83 | 29 |
| New Orleans, LA | 34 | 1 | 91 | 33 | 18.1 | 8.1 | 79 | 26 | 84 | 29 |
| Norfolk, VA | 26 | -3 | 91 | 33 | 24.8 | 11.1 | 76 | 24 | 82 | 28 |
| Pittsburgh, PA | 10 | -12 | 87 | 31 | 23.0 | 10.3 | 71 | 22 | 78 | 26 |
| Quebec City, QC | -10 | -23 | 81 | 27 | 25.1 | 11.2 | 68 | 20 | 75 | 24 |
| Salt Lake City, UT | 14 | -10 | 95 | 35 | 25.1 | 11.2 | 58 | 14 | 73 | 23 |
| San Francisco, CA | 41 | 5 | 78 | 26 | 28.6 | 12.8 | 60 | 16 | 67 | 19 |
| London, ON | 4 | -15 | 84 | 29 | 23.5 | 10.5 | 70 | 21 | 77 | 25 |
| Seattle, WA | 30 | -1 | 82 | 28 | 20.4 | 9.1 | 59 | 15 | 68 | 20 |
| St John's, NFLD | 8 | -13 | 74 | 23 | 35.6 | 15.9 | 65 | 18 | 69 | 21 |
| Tucson, AZ | 34 | 1 | 104 | 40 | 21.5 | 9.6 | 68 | 20 | 77 | 25 |
| Veracruz, MX | 59 | 15 | 92 | 33 | 45.2 | 20.2 | 79 | 26 | 86 | 30 |
| Minot, ND | -14 | -26 | 88 | 31 | 28.0 | 12.5 | 67 | 20 | 77 | 25 |
| Winnipeg, MB | -21 | -30 | 84 | 29 | 28.0 | 12.5 | 67 | 20 | 76 | 25 |

Source ASHRAE Fundamentals

3.3 Usage tables

3.3.8.1 Average climate data

| Europe | Temperature (°C) | Humidity (%) |
|-----------|------------------|--------------|
| Athens | 17.6 | 66 |
| Berne | 8.6 | - |
| Geneva | 9.2 | - |
| Amsterdam | 9.8 | 83 |
| Innsbruck | 8.4 | - |
| London | 9.9 | 79 |
| Madrid | 13.4 | 67 |
| Moscow | 3.6 | 79 |
| Paris | 10.3 | 77 |
| Rome | 15.4 | 72 |
| Salzburg | 8.2 | - |
| Warsaw | 7.3 | 82 |
| Vienna | 9.8 | 77 |
| Zurich | 8.2 | - |

| Africa | Annual Temperature (°C) | Min. Temperature (°C) | Max. Temperature (°C) |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Algeria, Skikda | 17 | 12 | 25 |
| Egypt, Cairo | 21 | 16 | 27 |
| Kenya, Mombasa | 26 | 24 | 28 |
| Libya | 20 | 12 | 28 |
| Morocco, Rabat | 17 | 12 | 22 |
| Nigeria, Port Harcourt | 26 | 25 | 28 |
| South Africa, Johannesburg | 16 | 11 | 20 |
| South Africa, Cape Town | 17 | 12 | 21 |
| Tunisia, Tunis | 28 | 11 | 27 |
| Zimbabwe, Harare | 19 | 15 | 21 |

| Arctic | Annual Temperature (°C) | Min. Temperature (°C) | Max. Temperature (°C) |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Antarctica, Ellsworth | -26 | -37 | -5 |
| Arctic | -19 | -35 | -1 |



| Asia | Annual Temperature (°C) | Min. Temperature (°C) | Max. Temperature (°C) |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Afghanistan, Kabul | 12 | 2 | 25 |
| Azerbaijan, baku | 13 | 6 | 25 |
| Bangladesh | 25 | 18 | 29 |
| Brunei | 27 | 23 | 31 |
| China, Beijing | 12 | -3 | 26 |
| China, Shanghai | 16 | 4 | 28 |
| India, Mumbai | 27 | 23 | 30 |
| India, Dehli | 25 | 14 | 32 |
| India, | 28 | 24 | 32 |
| Indonesia, Jakarta | 27 | 23 | 31 |
| Japan, Tokio | 15 | 8 | 27 |
| Malaysia, Kuala Lumpur | 27 | 22 | 32 |
| South Korea, Seoul | 12 | -2 | 25 |
| Taiwan, Taipei | 22 | 16 | 29 |
| Thailand, Bangkok | 28 | 21 | 30 |



| Middle East | Annual Temperature (°C) | Min. Temperature (°C) | Max. Temperature (°C) |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Bahrain | 25 | - | - |
| Gaza Strip | 19 | 13 | 26 |
| Iran, Tehran | 17 | 1 | 31 |
| Iran, Bandar-E-Abbas | 27 | 17 | 34 |
| Iraq, Baghdad | 22 | 8 | 34 |
| Israel, Jerusalem | 16 | 7 | 23 |
| Jordan, Ammam | 17 | 7 | 25 |
| Kuwait, Kuwait City | 26 | 12 | 37 |
| Lebanon, Beiroet | 20 | 12 | 26 |
| Oman, Muscat | 28 | 21 | 35 |
| Qatar, Doha | 27 | 17 | 35 |
| Saudi Arabia, Riyadh | 26 | 14 | 36 |
| Syria, Damascus | 16 | 6 | 26 |
| United Arab Emirates, Dubai | 27 | 18 | 35 |
| Yemen, Aden | 29 | 26 | 32 |



3.3 Usage tables

3.3.8.1 Average climate data



| Oceania | Annual Temperature (°C) | Min. Temperature (°C) | Max. Temperature (°C) |
|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Australia, Melbourne | 14 | 5 | 26 |
| Australia, Adelaide | 16 | 7 | 27 |
| New Zealand, Nelson | 12 | 5 | 23 |

| South America | Annual Temperature (°C) | Min. Temperature (°C) | Max. Temperature (°C) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Argentina, Buenos Aires | 16 | 10 | 23 |
| Brazil, Rio de Janeiro | 25 | 22 | 28 |
| Colombia, Bogota | 13 | 12 | 13 |
| Ecuador, Tulcan | 10 | 10 | 11 |
| French Guiana | 25 | 24 | 26 |
| Guyana | 27 | 22 | 32 |
| Peru, Cuzco | 12 | 3 | 20 |
| Suriname, Paramaribo | 27 | 22 | 33 |
| Venezuela, Caracas | 23 | 18 | 27 |
| Venezuela, Barcelona | 27 | 22 | 31 |

| The Netherlands | Temperature (°C) | Humidity (%) |
|----------------------|------------------|--------------|
| Amsterdam (Schiphol) | 9,8 | 84 |
| Arnhem (Deelen) | 9,4 | 81 |
| Den Haag | 9,9 | 83 |
| Den Helder | 9,6 | 84 |
| Eindhoven | 9,9 | 81 |
| Enschede | 9,3 | 83 |
| Groningen | 9,0 | 86 |
| Leeuwarden | 9,2 | 85 |
| Maastricht | 9,8 | 82 |
| Rotterdam | 10 | 84 |
| 's Hertogenbosch | 9,8 | 82 |
| Soesterberg | 9,6 | 81 |
| Utrecht (De Bilt) | 9,8 | 82 |
| Vlissingen | 10,4 | 82 |





| Belgium | Temperature (°C) | Humidity (%) |
|---------------|------------------|--------------|
| Antwerpen | 9,6 | - |
| Beauvechain | 9,2 | - |
| Botrange | 5,7 | - |
| Brussel | 9,7 | 81 |
| Chièvres | 9,0 | - |
| Dourbes | 8,6 | - |
| Elsenborn | 5,7 | - |
| Florennes | 8,2 | - |
| Gent | 9,5 | - |
| Kleine Brogel | 9,0 | - |
| Koksijde | 9,4 | - |
| Libramont | 7,5 | - |
| Spa | 7,4 | - |
| St-Hubert | 6,8 | - |
| Virton | 8,7 | - |

| France | Min. Temperature (°C) | Max. Temperature (°C) | Humidity (%) |
|-------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Ajaccio | 10 | 20,1 | - |
| Bourges | 0,8 | 15,8 | - |
| Bordeaux | 8,5 | 18,1 | - |
| Dijon | 6,4 | 15,1 | - |
| La Rochelle | 9,5 | 16,5 | - |
| Lille | 6,5 | 14,1 | - |
| Lyon | 7,5 | 16,4 | - |
| Nice | 12 | 19,2 | - |
| Paris | 8,6 | 15,5 | 77 |
| Perpignan | 11 | 19,8 | - |
| Rennes | 7,6 | 16 | - |
| Strasbourg | 6,1 | 14,8 | - |



3.3 Usage tables

3.3.8.1 Average climate data



| Germany | Temperature (°C) | Humidity (%) |
|----------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Berlin | 9.1 | 77 |
| Braunschweig | 8.6 | - |
| Bremerhaven | 8.8 | - |
| Dresden | 9.3 | 74 |
| Essen | 9.5 | 82 |
| Erfurt | 8.0 | - |
| Frankfurt/M. | 10.1 | 76 |
| Frankfurt a.O. | 8.2 | - |
| Giessen | 9.0 | - |
| Görlitz | 8.3 | - |
| Halle | 9.1 | 76 |
| Hamburg | 8.4 | 80 |
| Magdeburg | 9.1 | - |
| Mannheim | 10.2 | - |
| Munich | 8.1 | - |
| Nuremberg | 8.5 | - |
| Plauen | 7.2 | - |
| Regensburg | 8.1 | - |
| Rostock | 7.8 | - |
| Stuttgart | 8.6 | - |
| Trier | 9.1 | - |

3.3.8.2 Wind speed

| Beaufort scale | Wind speed (m/s) | Wind speed mph | Definition |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 0 | 0 - 0.2 | 0 - 1 | Calm |
| 1 | 0.3 - 1.5 | 1 - 3 | Light air |
| 2 | 1.6 - 3.3 | 4 - 7 | Light breeze |
| 3 | 3.4 - 5.4 | 8 - 12 | Gentle breeze |
| 4 | 5.5 - 7.9 | 13 - 17 | Moderate breeze |
| 5 | 8.0 - 10.7 | 18 - 24 | Fresh breeze |
| 6 | 10.8 - 13.8 | 25 - 30 | Strong breeze |
| 7 | 13.9 - 17.1 | 31 - 38 | Moderate gale (strong wind) |
| 8 | 17.2 - 20.7 | 39 - 46 | Fresh gale (strong wind) |
| 9 | 20.8 - 24.4 | 47 - 54 | Strong gale (strong wind) |
| 10 | 24.5 - 28.4 | 55 - 63 | Whole gale / storm |
| 11 | 28.5 - 32.6 | 64 - 73 | Violent storm |
| 0.12 | > 32.7 | > 74 | Hurricane |

Generally speaking, the wind speed is also dependent on the height and location (inland, coastal). In order to calculate the insulation thickness, the following wind speeds are generally used:

- Inside: 1.1 mph (0.5 m/s)
- Outside in protected conditions: 2.2 mph (1 m/s)
- Outside: 11 mph (5 m/s)
- Outside in windy conditions (e.g. near to coast): 22 mph (10 m/s)

3.3 Usage tables

3.3.9 Guidelines average velocities in pipe work

| Type of fluid / piping | | Velocity (m/s) | (ft/s) |
|---|---------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| Steam piping | Saturated steam | 20 to 35 | 650 to 1150 |
| | LP(low-pressure) steam | 30 | 1000 |
| | MP(medium-pressure) steam | 40 | 1300 |
| | HP(high-pressure) steam | 60 | 2000 |
| (Hot) water supply | Feed | 2 to 3 | 65 to 100 |
| | Return | 1 | 33 |
| Oil | Low viscosity | 1.5 | 50 |
| | High viscosity | 0.5 | 16 |
| District heating | Average | 2 | 65 |
| Central heating (non residential buildings) | Main feed stock | 0.5 | 16 |

3.3.10 Pipe diameter

Many different standards exist in relation to pipe sizes, the distribution of which varies according to the sector of industry and geographical area. The denotation of the pipe size generally comprises two numbers; one, which indicates the external diameter or nominal diameter, and a further number that indicates the wall thickness.

- In North America and Great Britain, high-pressure pipe systems are generally classified by means of the Nominal Pipe Size (NPS) System in Inches. The pipe sizes are documented in a series of standards. In the USA, these standards include API 5L, ANSI/ASME B36.10M and in Great Britain BS 1600 and BS 1387. As a rule, the pipe wall thickness is the fixed variable and the internal diameter is permitted to vary
- In Europe, the same internal diameter and wall strengths as used in the Nominal Pipe Size system are used for high-pressure pipe systems, however they are conveyed in a metric nominal diameter instead in inches as given in the NPS system. For nominal pipe sizes above 14, the nominal diameter (DN) size corresponds to the NPS size multiplied by 25 (not 25.4). These pipes

are documented in the EN 10255 standard (formerly DIN 2448 and BS 1387) and in the ISO 65 standard and are often denoted as DIN- or ISO-pipes.

In order to ensure a joint-free laying of the insulation, it is important that you know the actual external diameter of the pipe, as there are an immense number of pipe dimensions.

The following table provides a general overview of common pipe diameters with a comparison between the inches and DN size.

| Nominal Pipe Size (NPS in inch) | Nominal diameter (DN/Metric) | Outer diameter (inch) | Outer diameter (mm) |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1/8 | DN 6 | 0.406 | 10.3 |
| 1/4 | DN 8 | 0.539 | 13.7 |
| 3/8 | DN 10 | 0.673 | 17.1 |
| 1/2 | DN 15 | 0.840 | 21.3 |
| 3/4 | DN 20 | 1.050 | 26.7 |
| 1 | DN 25 | 1.315 | 33.4 |
| 1 ¼ | DN 32 | 1.660 | 42.2 |
| 1 ½ | DN 40 | 1.900 | 48.3 |
| 2 | DN 50 | 2.375 | 60.3 |
| 2 ½ | DN 65 | 2.875 | 73 |
| 3 | DN 80 | 3.5 | 88.9 |
| 3 ½ | DN 90 | 4 | 101.6 |
| 4 | DN 100 | 4.5 | 114.3 |
| 4 ½ | DN 115 | 5 | 127 |
| 5 | DN 125 | 5.563 | 141.3 |
| 6 | DN 150 | 6.625 | 168.3 |
| 8 | DN 200 | 8.625 | 219.1 |
| 10 | DN 250 | 10.75 | 273.1 |
| 12 | DN 300 | 12.75 | 323.9 |
| 14 | DN 350 | 14 | 355.6 |
| 16 | DN 400 | 16 | 406.4 |
| 18 | DN 450 | 18 | 457.2 |
| 20 | DN 500 | 20 | 508 |
| 22 | DN 550 | 22 | 558.8 |
| 24 | DN 600 | 24 | 609.6 |
| 26 | DN 650 | 26 | 660.4 |
| 28 | DN 700 | 28 | 711.2 |
| 30 | DN 750 | 30 | 762 |
| 32 | DN 800 | 32 | 812.8 |
| 34 | DN 850 | 34 | 863.6 |
| 36 | DN 900 | 36 | 914 |

3.3 Usage tables

3.3.11 Equivalent pipe length for flanges & valves

Reference values for plant related thermal bridges (table A14 - VDI 2055)

| Item no. | | Temperature range in °F | | |
|----------|--|---------------------------|------------|------------|
| | | 120 to 210 | 300 to 575 | 750 to 930 |
| | | Equivalent length in (ft) | | |
| 1 | Flanges for pressure stages PN 25 to PN 100 | | | |
| 1.1 | Uninsulated for pipes | | | |
| 1.1.1 | In buildings 70 °F | | | |
| | NPS 2 | 10 - 16 | 16 - 36 | 30 - 49 |
| | NPS 4 | 13 - 23 | 23 - 52 | 43 - 52 |
| | NPS 6 | 13 - 30 | 23 - 56 | 56 - 98 |
| | NPS 8 | 16 - 36 | 33 - 85 | 66 - 121 |
| | NPS 12 | 20 - 52 | 39 - 121 | 82 - 187 |
| 1.1.2 | In the open air 32 °F | | | |
| | NPS 2 | 23 - 36 | 30 - 52 | 39 - 62 |
| | NPS 4 | 30 - 46 | 43 - 75 | 59 - 92 |
| | NPS 6 | 36 - 59 | 46 - 95 | 72 - 121 |
| | NPS 8 | 43 - 79 | 59 - 125 | 89 - 151 |
| | NPS 12 | 52 - 105 | 69 - 177 | 105 - 226 |
| | NPS 16 | 72 - 102 | 92 - 174 | 144 - 223 |
| | NPS 20 | 82 - 105 | 102 - 171 | 157 - 226 |
| 1.2 | Insulated in buildings 70 °F and in the open air 32 °F for pipes | | | |
| | NPS 2 | 2.3 - 3.3 | 2.3 - 3.3 | 3.3 - 3.6 |
| | NPS 4 | 0.3 - 3.3 | 2.6 - 3.9 | 3.6 - 4.6 |
| | NPS 6 | 2.6 - 3.6 | 2.6 - 4.3 | 4.3 - 5.2 |
| | NPS 8 | 2.6 - 4.3 | 3 - 4.6 | 4.3 - 5.6 |
| | NPS 12 | 2.6 - 4.6 | 3.3 - 5.2 | 4.6 - 6.2 |
| | NPS 16 | 3.3 - 4.6 | 3.6 - 5.2 | 5.2 - 6.2 |
| | NPS 20 | 3.6 - 4.3 | 3.6 - 5.2 | 5.2 - 5.9 |
| 2 | Fittings for pressure stages PN 25 to PN 100 | | | |
| 2.1 | Uninsulated for pipes | | | |
| 2.1.1 | In buildings 70 °F | | | |
| | NPS 2 | 30 - 49 | 52 - 95 | 89 - 128 |
| | NPS 4 | 49 - 69 | 79 - 151 | 138 - 207 |
| | NPS 6 | 52 - 92 | 85 - 207 | 190 - 295 |
| | NPS 8 | 69 - 115 | 121 - 269 | 240 - 354 |
| | NPS 12 | 95 - 167 | 164 - 381 | 348 - 581 |
| | NPS 16 | 118 - 197 | 194 - 446 | 413 - 676 |
| | NPS 20 | 151 - 249 | 246 - 558 | 518 - 876 |





| Item no. | | Temperature range in °F | | |
|----------|--|-------------------------------|------------|------------|
| | | 120 to 210 | 300 to 575 | 750 to 930 |
| | | Equivalent length in (ft) | | |
| 2.1.2 | In the open air 32 °F / Only for pressure stage PN 25 | | | |
| | NPS 2 | 72 - 79 | 89 - 112 | 115 - 128 |
| | NPS 4 | 108 - 118 | 138 - 171 | 184 - 200 |
| | NPS 6 | 128 - 138 | 164 - 223 | 253 - 272 |
| | NPS 8 | 167 - 184 | 223 - 285 | 322 - 331 |
| | NPS 12 | 194 - 246 | 295 - 410 | 459 - 525 |
| | NPS 16 | 276 - 289 | 348 - 482 | 541 - 623 |
| | NPS 20 | 354 - 374 | 440 - 597 | 673 - 781 |
| 2.2 | Insulated for pipes | | | |
| 2.2.1 | In buildings 70 °F and in the open air 32 °F for pipes | | | |
| | NPS 2 | 13 - 16 | 16 - 20 | 20 - 23 |
| | NPS 4 | 13 - 16 | 16 - 20 | 20 - 23 |
| | NPS 6 | 13 - 16 | 16 - 20 | 20 - 23 |
| | NPS 8 | 16 - 23 | 16 - 30 | 23 - 33 |
| | NPS 12 | 16 - 30 | 20 - 39 | 23 - 43 |
| | NPS 16 | 20 - 30 | 23 - 39 | 26 - 49 |
| | NPS 20 | 23 - 36 | 26 - 49 | 30 - 62 |
| 3 | Pipe suspensions | supplementary value Z* | | |
| 3.1 | In buildings | 0.15 | | |
| 3.2 | In the open air | 0.25 | | |

* The ranges given cover the effect of the temperature and of the pressure stages. Flanges and fittings for higher pressure stages give higher values so overlappings in the given temperature ranges are possible.

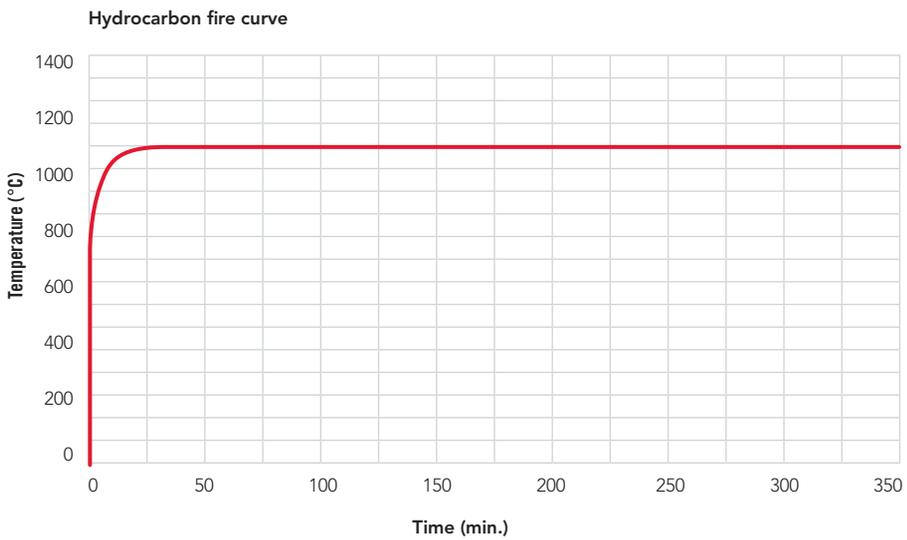
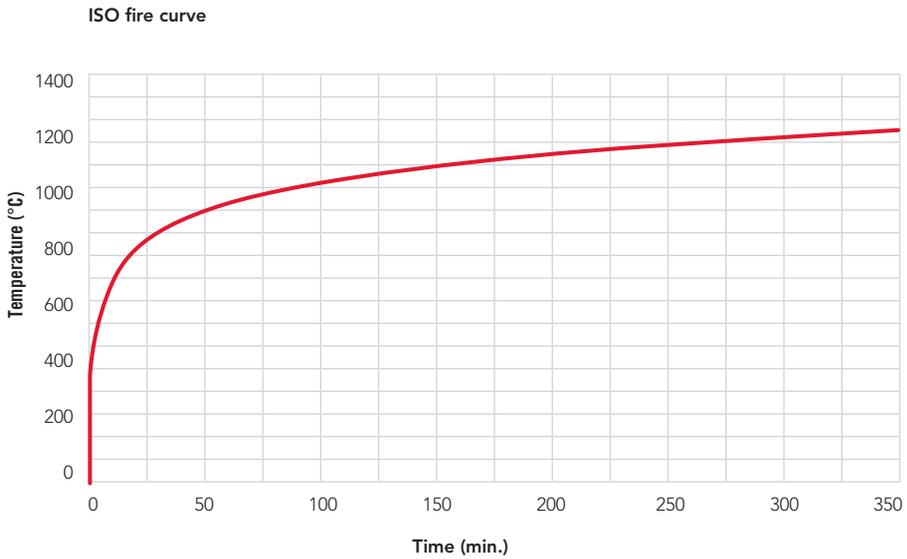
NOTE - Pressure Stage is equivalent to pressure in bar (e.g. PN 10 ≈ 10 Bar)

3.3.12 Minimum radius ProRox® boards (slabs)

| Minimal radius ProRox® boards (slabs) | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----|----|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| Product | Insulation thickness (inches) | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | 1.5 | 2 | 2.5 | 3 | 3.5 | 4 | 5 |
| ProRox® SL 920 ^{NA} | 16 | 21 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 72 | 84 |
| ProRox® SL 930 ^{NA} | 16 | 22 | 32 | 42 | 60 | 66 | 76 | 100 |
| ProRox® SL 960 ^{NA} | 20 | 30 | 48 | 66 | 92 | 100 | 100 | 120 |

3.3 Usage tables

3.3.13 Fire curve: ISO and hydrocarbon





4

Products

ProRox

Industrial
Insulation



ROCKWOOL™ High Temperature Industrial Solutions

NEW

PRODUCT NAMES

New product names, logical structure

Each product name is structured in the same clear way:

e.g.: **ProRox SL 960 MA**

Product range → Application code

Local market specifications

Product identifier

- SL = Boards/Slabs
- FSL = Flexible Boards/Slabs
- PS = Pipe Insulation
- MA = Wrap/Mat

Application code

- 400 Series = Industrial Fabricated Insulation
- 500 Series = Compression Insulation
- 900 Series = Comford/Multi-Purpose Insulation
- 900 Series = Thermal Insulation



C547 - Pipe

| Name | Nominal Density | Compliance | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|----|----|---|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|---------|------------------------|
| | | C547 | | | | E136 | S114 | S102 / E84 | C411 | C447 | C356 | C1104 | C165 | C585 | C800 | C795 |
| | | Mineral Fibre Preformed Pipe Insulation | | | | Behaviour at 750°C | Non-Combustibility | Surface Burning Characteristics | Hot Burning Characteristics | Maximum Surface Performance | Linear Shrinkage | Moisture Sorption | Compressive Strength | Diameters for Nominal Pipe Sizes | Wicking | Corrosiveness to steel |
| | | I | II | IV | V | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ProRox® PS 960 ^{NA} | 8 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1.3% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ | |
| ProRox® PS 980 ^{NA} | 11.25 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <0.6% | <1% | 1102 psf@10% | ■ | ■ | |

C612 - Board

| Name | Nominal Density | Compliance | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|-----|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| | | C612 | | E136 | S114 | S102 / E84 | C411 | C356 | C1104 | C518 (C177) | C165 | C665 | C795 |
| | | Mineral Fibre Board Insulation | | Behaviour at 750°C | Non-Combustibility | Surface Burning Characteristics | Hot Burning Characteristics | Linear Shrinkage | Moisture Sorption | Thermal Resistance | Compressive Strength | Corrosiveness to steel | Corrosiveness to steel |
| | | IVA | IVB | | | | | | | | | | |
| ProRox® SL 920 ^{NA} | 3 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 930 ^{NA} | 4 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | 63 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 940 ^{NA} | 6 lbs./ft. ³ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | 104 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 960 ^{NA} | 8 lbs./ft. ³ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | 167 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 540 ^{NA} | 10 lbs./ft. ³ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | 313 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 560 ^{NA} | 12 lbs./ft. ³ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | 418 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 590 ^{NA} | 15 lbs./ft. ³ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <0.38% | <1% | ■ | 1220 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 460 ^{NA} | 9 lbs./ft. ³ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <0.40% | <1% | ■ | 720 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 450 ^{NA} | 12 lbs./ft. ³ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | 418 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 430 ^{NA} | 4 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <0.35% | <1% | ■ | 71 psf@10% | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® SL 760 ^{NA} | 3.5 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | | ■ | ■ |

C553 - Blanket

| Name | Nominal Density | Compliance | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|--|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| | | C553 | E136 | S114 | S102 / E84 | C411 | C356 | C1104 | C518 (C177) | C665 | C795 |
| | | Mineral Fibre Blanket Thermal Insulation | Behaviour at 750°C | Non-Combustibility | Surface Burning Characteristics | Hot Burning Characteristics | Linear Shrinkage | Moisture Sorption | Thermal Resistance | Corrosiveness to steel | Corrosiveness to steel |
| | | IVA | | | | | | | | | |
| ProRox® MA 960 ^{NA} | 8 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1.49% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® FSL 920 ^{NA} | 3 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® FSL 930 ^{NA} | 4 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1.49% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® FSL 940 ^{NA} | 6 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1.68% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® FSL 960 ^{NA} | 8 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <0.68% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® MA 930 ^{NA} | 4 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1.49% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ |
| ProRox® MA 940 ^{NA} | 6 lbs./ft. ³ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | ■ | <1.68% | <1% | ■ | ■ | ■ |

For product data sheets, please visit www.rockwool.com

DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY: The statements and data contained in this brochure are for general information purposes ONLY. They are NOT specific technical recommendations as to any particular design or application and the ultimate determination as to product suitability is the sole responsibility of the installer or end user. Although the information contained herein, including ROCKWOOL product descriptions, is believed to be correct at the time of publication, accuracy cannot be guaranteed. ROCKWOOL fully reserves the right to make product specification changes, without notice or obligation, and to modify or discontinue any of its products at any time. In no event shall ROCKWOOL be liable for any direct, indirect, or consequential damages of any kind arising from information contained in this brochure, including, but not limited to, claims for loss of profits, business interruption, or damages to business reputation. This limitation of liability shall apply to all claims whether those claims are based in contract, tort, or any legal cause of action.

4. Products

Through the ProRox® range, ROCKWOOL Industrial Insulation offers a wide assortment of high quality stone wool (mineral wool) insulation products for sustainable insulation of industrial

and power generation plants. Each product is developed with a specific field of application (e.g. pipework, boilers, vessels, columns and storage tanks) in mind.

ROCKWOOL Industrial Insulation products and solutions for industry

■ ProRox® PS 960^{NA} and ProRox® PS 980^{NA}:

ROCKWOOL Pipe Sections are supplied, split and hinged for easy snap-on assembly and are suitable for thermal and acoustic insulation of industrial pipework. ROCKWOOL Pipe Sections are available in a wide range of diameters and thicknesses. ProRox® PS 980^{NA} is ASTM C547 Type V Pipe Section that offers both great thermal performance and exceptional compressive strength.



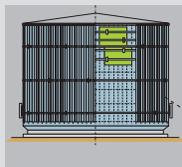
■ ProRox® MA 960^{NA}:

Available with either a black scrim or foil facing, ProRox® MA 960^{NA} is a flexible stone wool blanket insulation that is non-combustible and engineered for hard-to-fit, high-temperature surfaces such as large-diameter pipes, vessels, boilers, tanks, furnaces and irregularly shaped mechanical equipment.

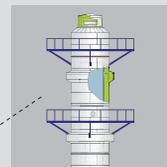
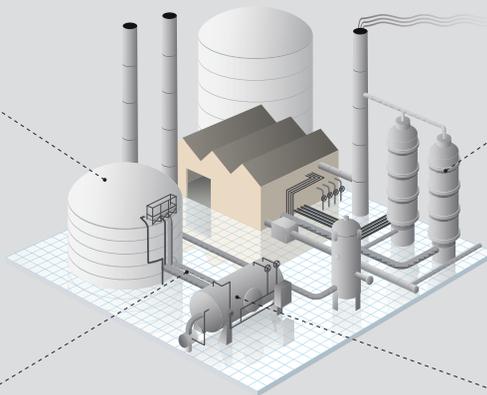


■ ProRox® BOARD, FLEX, and WRAP:

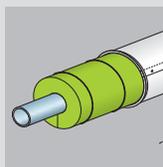
ProRox® is available in rigid, semi-rigid and wrap (mat) products in a variety of densities and dimensions. ProRox® is suitable for use in petro-chemical, power generation plants, boilers, furnaces, towers, ovens and drying equipment.



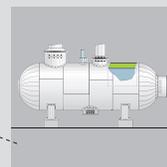
Storage tanks



Columns



Pipework



Vessels

4. Products

The main characteristic of ProRox® products is their excellent thermal insulation capacity. Next to this, they of course also comply with the most stringent requirements on fire resistance and

acoustic insulation. Below is a summary of ProRox® items and the recommended applications. More information can be found on our website www.rockwool.com

| Insulation Type | New Name | Old Name | Application | Application Example |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|--|
| Rolled Pipe Wrap (Mat) | ProRox® MA 930 ^{NA} | RHT® 40 Wrap | Thermal | Towers, vessels, large diameter pipe |
| | ProRox® MA 940 ^{NA} | RHT® 60 Wrap | Thermal | Boilers, columns, vessels |
| | ProRox® MA 960 ^{NA} | ENERWRAP® 80 | Thermal | Large diameter piping, vessels, ducts, equipment |
| Preformed Pipe | ProRox® PS 960 ^{NA} | TECHTON® 1200 | Thermal | Industrial piping |
| | ProRox® PS 980 ^{NA} | STURIDROCK® | Thermal & Compression | Industrial piping |
| Semi-rigid Board (Slab) | ProRox® SL 430 ^{NA} | New Product | Industrial Fabrication | Pipe and Tank wrap |
| | ProRox® SL 430 ^{NA} | New Product | Comfort/Multi-purpose | Onsite living quarters, industrial HVAC systems |
| | ProRox® SL 9200 ^{NA} | RHT® 30 | Thermal | Towers |
| | ProRox® SL 930 ^{NA} | RHT® 40 | Thermal | Tank walls, industrial buildings |
| | ProRox® SL 940 ^{NA} | RHT® 60 | Thermal | Oven equipment, furnaces, vessels, large diameter piping, light weight panel systems |
| Rigid Board (Slab) | ProRox® SL 450 ^{NA} | New Product | Industrial Fabrication | Used to fabricate V-groove pipe sections |
| | ProRox® SL 460 ^{NA} | New Product | Industrial Fabrication | Used to fabricate precision cut pipe sections |
| | ProRox® SL 960 ^{NA} | RHT® 80 | Thermal | Tanks, vessels, industrial duct work |
| Pressure Resistant Board (Slab) | ProRox® SL 540 ^{NA} | RHT® 100 | Pressure Resistance | Tank tops, vessel heads |
| | ProRox® SL 560 ^{NA} | RHT® 120 | Pressure Resistance | Tank tops, vessel heads, surface areas where ladders are utilized |
| | ProRox® SL 590 ^{NA} | RHT® 150 | Pressure Resistance | Tank tops |
| Flexible Board (Slab) | ProRox® FSL 920 ^{NA} | RHT® 30 Flex | Thermal | Towers |
| | ProRox® FSL 930 ^{NA} | RHT® 40 Flex | Thermal | Industrial buildings |
| | ProRox® FSL 940 ^{NA} | RHT® 60 Flex | Thermal | Furnaces, industrial buildings |
| | ProRox® FSL 960 ^{NA} | RHT® 80 Flex | Thermal | Boilers, distillation columns, vessels, tanks |
| Granulated loose fill | ProRox® GR 903 | - | Thermal | Cold boxes, air separation plants |
| Loose fill | ProRox® LF 970 | - | Thermal & Acoustic | Joints, voids, irregularly formed constructions |

ProRox® PS 960^{NA}

Applications

ProRox® PS 960^{NA} is a pre-formed mandrel wound stone wool (mineral wool) pipe section. The highly durable sections are supplied split and hinged for easy snap-on assembly, and are especially suitable for thermal and acoustic insulation of high temperature industrial pipe work subject to mechanical loads.



Thermal

Benefits:

- Operating temperature up to 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Fire resistant; non-combustible, with melting point of approx. 2150 °F (1177 °C)
- Water and moisture resistant; impregnated with high-water repellent characteristics
- Non-corrosive
- Lasting thermal performance not compromised by water
- Controls sound transmission as a result of:
 - Non-directional fiber composition and density
 - Tight, seamless joints
- Easy to handle and cut with a knife for easy installation
- Range of sizes, from 1/2" to 36" NPS

ProRox® PS 980^{NA}

Applications

ProRox® PS 980^{NA} is a heavy duty, pressure resistant pre-formed mandrel wound stone wool pipe section. The highly durable sections are supplied split and hinged for easy snap-on assembly, and are especially suitable for thermal and acoustic insulation of high temperature industrial pipe work subjected to heavy mechanical loads.



Thermal & Compression

Benefits:

- ASTM C547 Type V pipe insulation (Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation)
- Operating temperature up to 1400 °F (760 °C)
- Excellent compressive strength properties ideal for areas subject to heavy mechanical loads
- Easier cutting at point of installation; no band saw required
- Virtually no dust to keep work environments cleaner
- Fire resistant; non-combustible, with melting point of approx. 2150 °F (1177 °C)
- Top thermal performance; use less product
- Smaller diameters compared to calcium silicate, reducing jacketing costs
- Range of thicknesses and sizes, from 1/2" to 34" NPS

For more detailed information such as: product performance, certification and standards, see our website: www.rockwool.com

4. Products

ProRox® MA 960^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® MA 960^{NA} is a rolled and faced stone wool insulation wrap (mat) designed for high temperature industrial applications where flexibility is required.

Product is ideal for large diameter piping, vessels, ducts and equipment subject to light mechanical loads.

Benefits:

- Designed for structural members of all shapes and sizes
- Operating temperature up to 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Available in many lengths and cut to size
- Black scrim-facing for chalk marking and accurate cuts at point of installation
- Suitable for double layering
- Non-directional fiber composition and density controls noise
- Water and moisture resistant; does not absorb moisture to maintain insulating value

Variants available on request:

- ProRox® MA 960^{NA} can be supplied with reinforced foil facing. For more details contact your ROCKWOOL representative.



For more detailed information such as: product performance, certification and standards, see our website: www.rockwool.com

ProRox® SL 920^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® SL 920^{NA} is a semi-rigid stone wool thermal insulation board (slab) for intermediate temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Flexible application
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



ProRox® SL 930^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® SL 930^{NA} is a semi-rigid stone wool thermal insulation board (slab) for intermediate to high temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Lightweight, but durable
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Melting point of approximately 2150 °F (1177 °C)
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of facings and dimensions



4. Products

ProRox® SL 940^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® SL 940^{NA} is a rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) for high temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Lightweight, but durable
- Retains shape
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of facings and dimensions



ProRox® SL 960^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® SL 960^{NA} is a rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) for high temperature industrial applications subject to light mechanical loads.

Benefits:

- Good compressive resistance, retains shape
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Melting point of approximately 2150 °F (1177 °C)
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of facings and dimensions



For more detailed information such as: product performance, certification and standards, see our website: www.rockwool.com

ProRox® SL 540^{NA}



Pressure Resistance

Applications

ProRox® SL 540^{NA} is a pressure resistant rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) designed for high temperature applications subjected to light mechanical loads.

Benefits:

- Developed for thermal insulation subject to light mechanical loads
- Exceptional compressive strength
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of facings and dimensions



ProRox® SL 560^{NA}



Pressure Resistance

Applications

ProRox® SL 560^{NA} is a pressure resistant rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) designed for high temperature applications subjected to medium mechanical loads.

Benefits:

- Strong thermal performance for applications subject to medium mechanical loads
- Exceptional compressive strength
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of facings and dimensions



4. Products

ProRox® SL 590^{NA}



Pressure Resistance

Applications

ProRox® SL 590^{NA} is a pressure resistant rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) designed for thermal insulation of tank tops (vessel heads) exposed to foot traffic or constructions subjected to heavy mechanical loads.

Benefits:

- Suitable for applications subject to foot traffic and heavy mechanical loads
- Exceptional compressive strength
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200°F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



For more detailed information such as: product performance, certification and standards, see our website: www.rockwool.com

ProRox® SL 430^{NA}



Industrial Fabrication

Applications

ProRox® SL 430^{NA} is a semi rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) that can be fabricated into high temperature industrial pipe and tank wrap.

Benefits:

- Flexible application
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Can be fabricated and laminated
- Excellent thermal resistance
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



Fabricated product shown using ProRox® SL 430^{NA}

ProRox® SL 450^{NA}



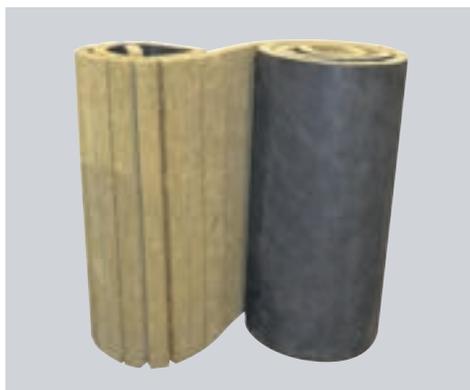
Industrial Fabrication

Applications

ProRox® SL 450^{NA} is a rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) that can be fabricated into high temperature industrial insulation for lightweight cut pipe and v-groove products.

Benefits:

- Lightweight and flexible
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200°F (650°C)
- Can be fabricated and laminated
- Excellent thermal resistance
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



Fabricated product shown using ProRox® SL 450^{NA}

4. Products

ProRox® SL 460^{NA}



Industrial Fabrication

Applications

ProRox® SL 460^{NA} is a rigid stone wool insulation board (slab) that can be fabricated into high temperature industrial pipe sections.

Benefits:

- Lightweight and flexible
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Can be fabricated and laminated
- Excellent thermal resistance
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



Fabricated product shown using ProRox® SL 460^{NA}

ProRox® SL 760^{NA}



Comfort/Multi-purpose

Applications

ProRox® SL 760^{NA} is a semi-rigid stone wool multi-purpose acoustic insulation board (slab) that can be fabricated for use in applications such as light weight panels.

Benefits:

- Lightweight and easy to install
- Non-combustible
- Excellent thermal resistance
- Low moisture sorption
- Non-corrosive and chemically inert
- CFC and HCFC free product and process
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



For more detailed information such as: product performance, certification and standards, see our website: www.rockwool.com

ProRox® FSL 920^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® FSL 920^{NA} is a flexible stone wool thermal insulation board (slab) for intermediate temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Flexible application
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



ProRox® FSL 930^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® FSL 930^{NA} is a flexible stone wool thermal insulation board (slab) for intermediate to high temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Lightweight, but durable
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Melting point of approximately 2150 °F (1177 °C)
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



4. Products

ProRox® FSL 940^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® FSL 940^{NA} is a flexible stone wool thermal insulation board (slab) for high temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Lightweight, but durable
- Retains shape
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



ProRox® FSL 960^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® FSL 960^{NA} is a flexible stone wool insulation board (slab) for high temperature industrial applications subject to light mechanical loads.

Benefits:

- Good compressive resistance, retains shape
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Melting point of approximately 2150 °F (1177 °C)
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Available in a wide range of dimensions



For more detailed information such as: product performance, certification and standards, see our website: www.rockwool.com

ProRox® MA 930^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® MA 930^{NA} is a rolled stone wool thermal insulation wrap (mat) for intermediate to high temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Flexible application for round and irregular shaped equipment such as removable insulation systems
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Service temperature of 1200 °F (650 °C)
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Strong durability and acoustical properties
- Available in a wide range of thicknesses and lengths



ProRox® MA 940^{NA}



Thermal

Applications

ProRox® MA 940^{NA} is a rolled stone wool thermal insulation wrap (mat) for high temperature industrial applications.

Benefits:

- Flexible application for irregular shaped equipment
- Excellent fire resistance properties
- Non-combustible
- Water repellent yet vapor permeable
- Strong durability and acoustical properties
- Available with an optional black mat facing and a wide range of thicknesses and lengths



4. Products

ProRox® GR 903

Applications

ProRox® GR 903 is a stone wool granulate with no additives. The granulate is especially suitable for the thermal insulation of cold boxes and air separation plants.

Benefits:

- Complies with the most stringent requirements for the insulation of cold boxes
- Chemically inert to steel
- Easy to remove for inspection purposes



Granulated loose fill



ProRox® LF 970

Applications

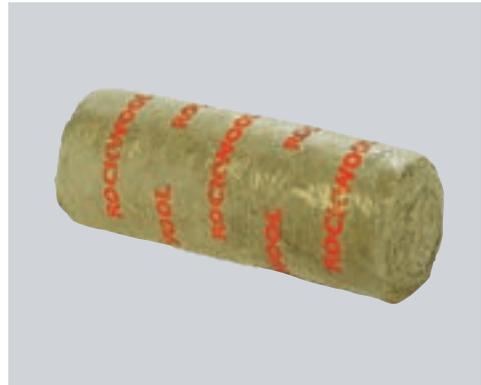
ProRox® LF 970 is lightly bonded, impregnated stone wool. This product is especially suitable for thermal and acoustic insulation of voids, joints and irregularly formed constructions.

Benefits:

- Ease of use
- Flexible application



Loose fill



For more details contact your ROCKWOOL representative.

ProRox® GRP 1000

CE Watertight insulation cladding

ProRox® GRP 1000, the watertight* cladding

Achieving the best insulation system for your application is not easy. Besides the right choice and implementation of the insulation, the insulation protection system also plays an important role. Specific uses call for specific solutions. Certain processes require a fully watertight and closed finish. Strong and easy to clean, with great durability and chemical resistance. An insulation protection that results in a high amount of operational safety, low maintenance costs and limited energy costs. ROCKWOOL Industrial Insulation, together with FiberTec Europe, has therefore developed an innovative protection system for ProRox® insulation: ProRox® GRP 1000.

ProRox® GRP 1000: for a durable insulation protection

ProRox® GRP 1000 is a fiberglass reinforced polyester wrap positioned between two sheets of film. The material contains resins, fiberglass and special fillers and is ready to use. Unprocessed it is soft and malleable. In this state, ProRox® GRP 1000 can be cut or trimmed into any shape which makes it easy to apply to the insulation. The polyester subsequently cures under the influence of ultraviolet (UV) light. After curing, ProRox® GRP 1000 is watertight and is able to give optimal mechanical protection.



Benefits:

The ProRox® GRP 1000 system has important advantages that enhances the quality of your work.

- **Great durability:** GRP 1000 forms a seamless connection that offers a watertight protection to the ROCKWOOL insulation. It minimizes the damaging effects of the weather (wind, rain, seawater, etc.) or general wear and tear. It is chemical-resistant and withstands mechanical stresses (e.g. can be walked on).
- **Easy to clean:** ProRox® GRP 1000 can withstand spray-cleaning. Cleaning with water is possible without damaging the insulation.
- **Low start-up costs:** processing and installation takes place on location. This makes investments for the pre-fabrication of the insulation protection unnecessary.
- **Flexible use:** cold and hot insulation, underground and above ground cables and pipes, on and offshore. ProRox® GRP 1000 molds itself to every technical application.

* Watertight as defined by product data sheet values.

ProRox® GRP 1000: strong and easy to install.



Reinforced polyester wrap (mat) positioned between two sheets of film.



ProRox® GRP 1000 can be cut or trimmed into any shape.



The polyester cures ultraviolet (UV) light.



Optimal mechanical protection and watertight*.

* Watertight as defined by product data sheet values.

For more details contact your ROCKWOOL representative.

ROCKWOOL Technical Insulation

ROCKWOOL™ Technical Insulation is part of the ROCKWOOL Group and is offering advanced technical insulation solutions for the process industry as well as marine & offshore.

At the ROCKWOOL Group, we are committed to enriching the lives of everyone who experiences our product solutions. Our expertise is perfectly suited to tackle many of today's biggest sustainability and development challenges, from energy consumption and noise pollution to fire resilience, water scarcity and flooding. Our product range reflects the diversity of the world's needs, while supporting our stakeholders in reducing their own carbon footprint.

Stone wool is a versatile material and forms the basis of all our businesses. With approx. 10,500 passionate colleagues in 38 countries, we are the world leader in stone wool solutions, from building insulation to acoustic

ceilings, external cladding systems to horticultural solutions, engineered fibres for industrial use to insulation for the process industry and marine & offshore.

All explanations correspond to our current range of knowledge and are therefore up-to-date. The examples of use outlined in this document serve only to provide a better description and do not take special circumstances of specific cases into account. ROCKWOOL Technical Insulation places great value upon continuous development of products, to the extent that we too continuously work to improve our products without prior notice. We therefore recommend that you use the most recent edition of our publications, as our wealth of experience and knowledge is always growing. Should you require related information for your specific application or have any technical queries, please contact our sales department or visit our website www.rockwool.com.

DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY: The statements and data contained in this brochure are for general information purposes ONLY. They are NOT specific technical recommendations as to any particular design or application and the ultimate determination as to product suitability is the sole responsibility of the installer or end user. Although the information contained herein, including ROCKWOOL product descriptions, is believed to be correct at the time of publication, accuracy cannot be guaranteed. ROCKWOOL fully reserves the right to make product specification changes, without notice or obligation, and to modify or discontinue any of its products at any time. In no event shall ROCKWOOL be liable for any direct, indirect, or consequential damages of any kind arising from information contained in this brochure, including, but not limited to, claims for loss of profits, business interruption, or damages to business reputation. This limitation of liability shall apply to all claims whether those claims are based in contract, tort, or any legal cause of action. Definition of watertight as per values in ProRox GRP 1000 product data sheets.

®/TM: US - owner Rockwool International A/S used under license;
Canada - owner Roxul Inc.



ROCKWOOL Technical Insulation

ROXUL INC.
8024 Esquesing Line,
Milton, ON L9T 6W3, Canada
T. 1 800 265 68788
contactus@rockwool.com
www.rockwool.com